



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

2025

5th

PRIMARY FIVE

FIRST TERM

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Part 1

Part 2





Punctuation

علامات الترقيم





Capital Letters
الحروف الكبيرة
A - B - C

1. بداية الجملة
خبرية - استفهامية - أمرية

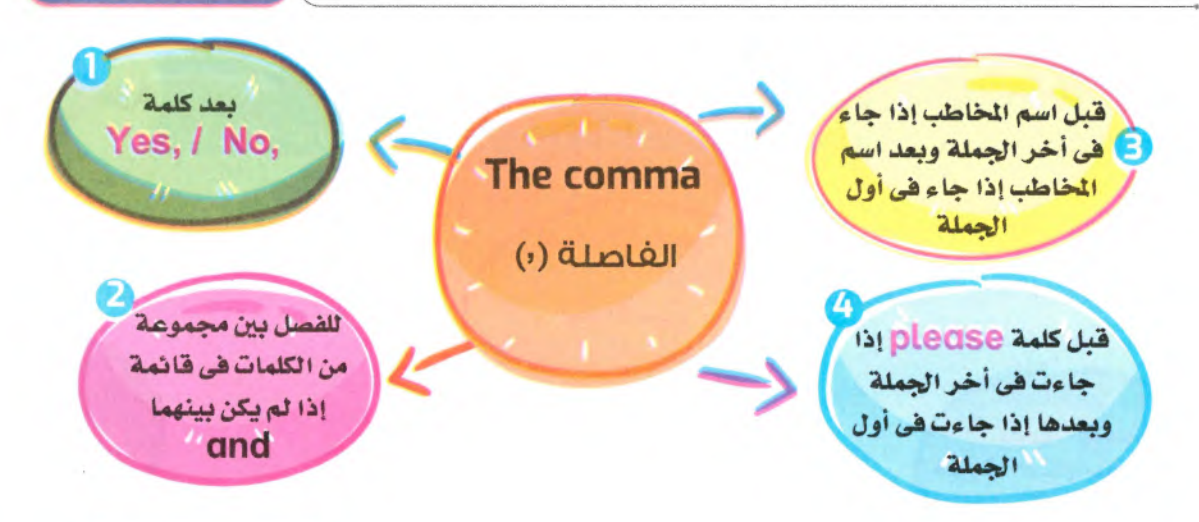
2. الألقاب
Mr - Miss - Mrs
الاختصارات
Dr - CD - TV

3. أنا I
الضمير I فى أى مكان فى الجملة capital

4. أسماء البلاد والمدن
Cairo - Alexandria
أسماء الشهور
June - March

Examples:

1. Yasin is a vet. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your bag. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your umbrella? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I want some food. I'm hungry. (الضمير I)
5. We visited Giza in June. (أسماء المدن و الشهور)
6. Mr Osman plays football on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Eyad. / Eyad, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Mustafa. (علامة تعجب)

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Primary 5
2024 - 2025

Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark and a half each)**

B- Reading (14 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided.

Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given.

The first sentence should be written in full. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80) to NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)

B: TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences. **(One mark each)**

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each is provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **THIRTY (30)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph - Biography

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)





How to write a paragraph
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٣٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال
Ahmed	School	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

- فاعل + verb to be + صفة → She is happy.
- فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة → Ahmed is a teacher.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان → He went to school.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن → We play on Friday.
- فاعل + فعل + مفعول → I love him.
- فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة → I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٣٠ كلمة عن:

Healthy food

Guiding phrases

healthy meals - rice for lunch

I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. I love eating them very much. They are delicious, too.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about....................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية و ما باللون الازرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Last week, my father bought me a new watch. It's blue and brown. It helps me learn about the time.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word "......." refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) للنص أو لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة أو أكثر بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the text / the first / the second / the third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص نص أو فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها.

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية .

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.

أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in a sentence.

I went to Giza last winter. I went with my friends. We saw the Pyramids and rode camels. We had a great time.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسى بمدينة **Giza**.

٢- أهم ما يخصك هو الذهاب إلى الجيزة. وماذا فعلت هناك والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **went / saw / rode**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة .

Summary

I went to Giza, saw the Pyramids and rode camels.

2- Summarize the text in two sentences of your own words.

My favorite sport is football. I play football in the club. I go to the club every day. I practice a lot. There are two teams in football. Each team tries to win the match.

١ - أهم شئ **football**

٢ - استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٣ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My favorite sport is football. There are the two teams and each team tries to win the match.

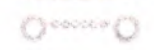
Let's remember!

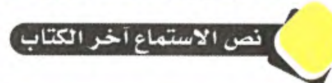
1 Unjumble the letters to make words: اعد ترتيب الحروف لكتابة الكلمات:

1. lcel ehopn ----------
2. emtor ----------
3. lpouoinlt ----------
4. aspsdowr ----------
5. tbao ----------
6. atxi ----------
7. odruhtg ----------
8. mart ----------
9. od eracrshe ----------
10. artfcif ----------
11. lfodo ----------
12. etxt smeagse ----------

2 Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words:

اكمل الجدول بكلمات تمرين ١. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل الكلمات:





Social media	Transportation	Environment
password	metro	pollution

3 Now complete the crossword with the words in Exercise 1:

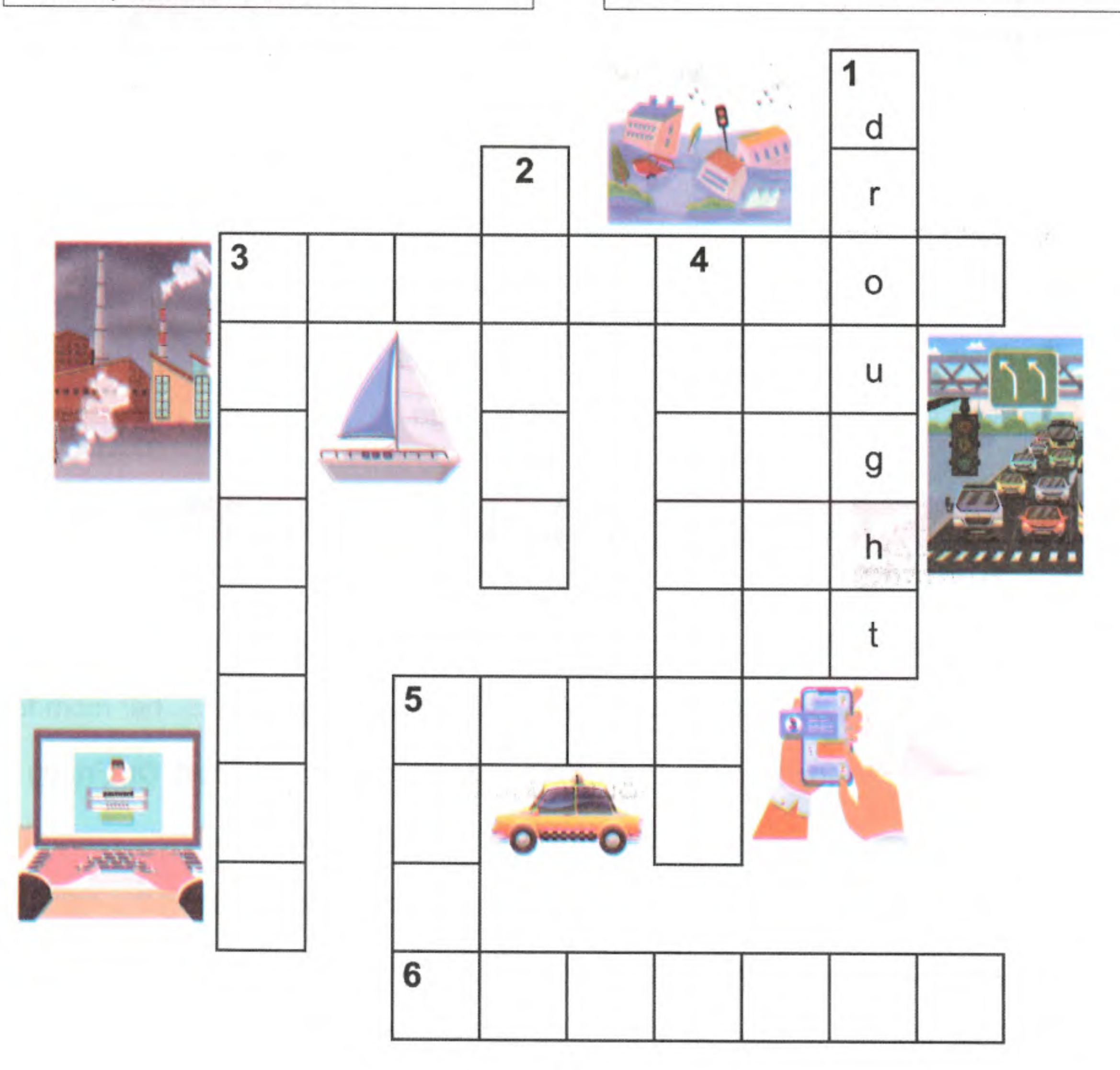
اكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بكلمات من تمرين ١ :

Down

1. When there isn't enough water.
2. When there's too much water.
3. The special code you need to access your computer.
4. Lots of cars on the road.
5. Public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train.

Across

3. When there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air.
5. A car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives.
6. A small note you write to someone on your cell phone.



Let's remember!

4 Write three sentences about your favorite transportation. Talk about why you like it. Is it good or bad for the environment?

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن وسيلة المواصلات المفضلة لديك. تكلم عن أسباب حبك لها. هل هى مفيدة أم ضارة بالبيئة؟

My favorite transportation is ....

....

....

....

5 Write the past simple tense for the verbs below. Then check the irregular verbs:

اكتب صيغة الماضى البسيط للأفعال بالأسفل. ثم ضع علامة ✓ امام الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

1.	is	was	✓	**2.**	play	played	
3.	swim	....	☐	**4.**	see	....	☐
5.	walk	....	☐	**6.**	study	....	☐
7.	have	....	☐	**8.**	help	....	☐
9.	do	....	☐	**10.**	go	....	☐

6 Complete the text with the past simple verbs from Exercise 5:

اكمل النص بأفعال فى الماضى البسيط من تمرين ٥:

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They (1) had a nice weekend. They (2) .... football together in the park on Friday morning. Then, Lama (3) .... her mom to clean the house. And Maged (4) .... with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they (5) .... a movie. It (6) .... very good. Maged (7) .... to the beach along the coast path and (8) .... in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening, Maged (9) .... for a test and Lama (10) .... her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

7 Work with a partner. Answer the questions:

اشترك مع زميلك. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Did Maged and Lama like their weekend? Why / Why not? ....
2. Who helped mom? ....
3. Who went swimming with dad? ....
4. Who went to the zoo? ....

8 Circle the correct verb in the sentences:

ضع دائرة حول الفعل الصحيح فى الجمل:

1. You **should / can** get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.
2. We **must / can't** plant more trees to get fresher air.
3. Wael **should / shouldn't** give his password to his friends.
4. Dina **can / needs** to buy another pen to do her homework.
5. Dalia **should / can't** put on her seat belt.
6. You **mustn't / need** to look right and left before you cross the road.

9 You are playing a computer game with your friends. Complete the table with the pros and cons from the box, then add two ideas of your own:

تلعب العاب كمبيوتر مع أصدقائك. اكمل الجدول بالمميزات والعيوب من الإطار ثم ضف فكرتين من عندك:

lots of fun - wastes time - helps us think about solutions - some games don't teach us anything - we can learn from some of them

Playing a computer game

Pros مميزات		Cons عيوب
lots of fun		wastes time

Let's remember!

10 **Complete the phrases for writing about pros and cons with words in the box:**

اكمل العبارات عن كتابة المميزات والعيوب بكلمات من الأطار كالمثال:

also - general / conclusion - opinion - other hand - think

1. Many people think that tablets are small and light.
2. They ....
3. But, on the ....
4. In ....
5. In my ....

11 **Write a paragraph using the phrases in Exercise 10:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية باستخدام العبارات بتمرين ١٠:

Many people think that tablets are small and light. ....

.... They also say ....

....

But, on the other hand, they think that tablets have small screens. ....

....

In general, ...

In my opinion, ...



I discover myself

We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحثًا ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.

2. Listen to a conversation about favorite food.

- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة حول الطعام المفضل.

3. Practice making suggestions with **how about**.

- يتدرب الطالب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام ماذا عن.

4. Read a fairy tale.

- يقرأ الطالب قصة خيالية.

5. Practice saying vowel sounds.

- يتدرب الطالب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.

6. Understand decimal fractions.

- يفهم الطالب الكسور العشرية.

7. Write a recipe.

- يكتب الطالب وصفة طعام.

8. Research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

- يجرى الطالب بحثًا ويعمل ملصق عن الفاكهة والخضراوات التي تنمو في مصر.

Lesson 1 ★ Food and drink

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


carrots
جزر


chocolate
شيكولاتة


eggs
بيض




Food
الطعام


limes
ليمون أخضر


lemons
ليمون أصفر

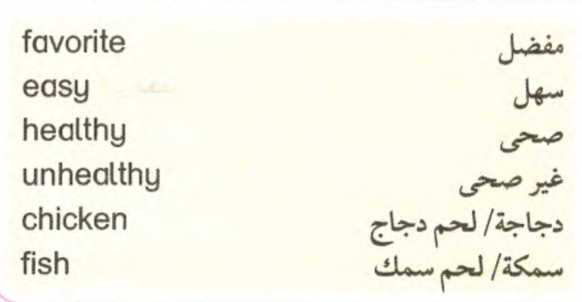
beans
فول


pineapples
أناناس


coconuts
جوز الهند


onions
بصل

Other words كلمات أخرى



favorite	مفضل	mango	ثمرة مانجو
easy	سهل	garden	حديقة
healthy	صحى	potatoes	بطاطس
unhealthy	غير صحى	fresh	طازج
chicken	دجاجة/ لحم دجاج	market	سوق
fish	سمكة/ لحم سمك		

Help your child learn about food.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن الطعام.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
love	يحب	loved
collect	يجمع	collected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يملك	had
eat	يأكل	ate
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold



Study the following

1. What's your favorite food? — ما هو طعامك المفضل؟
2. I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it? — أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية ، أليس كذلك؟
3. I think it's OK to eat a little. — أعتقد أنه لا بأس من تناول القليل منها.
4. It is unhealthy if you eat a lot. — من غير الصحي تناول الكثير منها.
5. We have a mango tree in the garden. — لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.
6. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree. — لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر و شجرة ليمون أصفر.
7. My uncle grows onions and potatoes. — يزرع عمي البصل و البطاطس.
8. He collects fresh eggs every day. — يجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم.
9. Sometimes he sells them at the market. — يبيعه في بعض الأحيان في السوق.
10. Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground. — لا تنمو ثمار الأناناس على الأشجار. إنها تنمو على الأرض.

Unit 1 We plant our food

1 Listen and read: Does Fareeda think chocolate is healthy?

استمع وأقرأ: هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشيكولاتة طعام صحي؟




استمع إلى النص:

Dina : What's your favorite food, Fareeda?

Fareeda: That's easy! It's chocolate.

Dina : Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

Fareeda: I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

Dina : What's your favorite healthy food?

Fareeda: Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

Dina : I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

Fareeda: My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

2 Listen again and answer T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بصح أو خطأ وصحح الجمل الخطأ:

1- Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate. [T]

2- Dina doesn't like chocolate. [ ]

3- Fareeda's favorite healthy food is fish. [ ]

4- Fareeda has a mango tree in her garden. [ ]

3 Do you grow fruit at home? Say:

هل تزرع فاكهة في المنزل؟ قل:

We grow mangoes in our garden!

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.



Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My uncle grows ---------- in his field.
   - a lemons and carrots
   - b apples and oranges
   - c limes and beans
   - d onions and tomatoes
2. My uncle gets fresh ---------- from chickens.
   - a meat b eggs c legs d milk
3. My uncle sells some eggs at the ---------- .
   - a shop b beach c market d garden
4. My uncle gets a lot of ---------- at the market.
   - a money b chickens c tomatoes d onions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can buy and sell things at the ---------- . بنى سويف - إدارة ناصر (2024)
   - a market b zoo c hotel d school
2. My father planted a lemon tree in our ---------- . بنى سويف - إدارة الواسطى (2024)
   - a office b room c garden d library
3. We grow ---------- in our garden. القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)
   - a limes b chickens c eggs d chocolate
4. Farmers ---------- eggs from chickens.
   - a put b collect c grow d play
5. Pineapples grow on the ---------- .
   - a sky b flower c ground d cloud
6. It's OK to eat a ---------- of chocolate.
   - a more b little c much d many
7. Eating a lot of chocolate is ---------- .
   - a unhealthy b fresh c good d favorite

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - little - chicken - grow - healthy

I love chocolate, but it's unhealthy. We should eat a (1) .... My brother like healthy food. He likes (2) .... and fish. Fruits and vegetables are (3) .... I love mangoes. We can (4) .... a mango tree in our garden.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. food - What's - favorite - your? ------------------------------------
2. don't - trees - Pineapples - on - grow. ------------------------------------
3. and - My - onions - grows - uncle - potatoes. ------------------------------------
4. a mango tree - garden - the - We - in - have. ------------------------------------

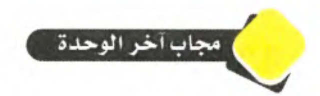
5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- do you grow fruit ------------------------------------

2- dina doesn't like chocolate ------------------------------------

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:



Your favorite fruit

Guiding questions

1- What's your favorite fruit?

2- Are mangoes healthy or unhealthy?

Lesson 2 Part 1 ⭐ My shopping list

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

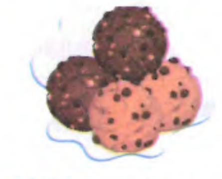

bananas موز


chicken لحم دجاج


nuts مكسرات


mangoes مانجو


watermelons بطيخ


cookies كعك محلى


koshari كشرى


tomatoes طماطم


rice أرز

Other words كلمات أخرى



shopping list	قائمة مشتروات
How about....?	ماذا عن...؟
How much?	كم سعر؟
a good price	سعر جيد/ مناسب
juicy	كثير العصارة
in total	إجمالا
lucky	محظوظ
mahalabia	مهلبية
of course	بالتأكيد
fridge	ثلاجة
dessert	طعام التحلية
grapes	عنب
ful medames	فول مدمس

boiled egg	بيض مسلوق
yogurt	زبادى
fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
fried eggs	بيض مقلى
burger	برجر
french fries	بطاطس مقلية
cucumber	خيارة
jam	مربى
honey	عسل
a balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن
nutrients	عناصر غذائية
shawerma	شاورما

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
visit	يزور	visited
unpack	يفرغ	unpacked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
come	يأتى	came
buy	يشترى	bought
think	يفكر	thought

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 للاقتراح نستخدم:

How about + V + ing...........?

-How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

-Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

2 لطلب الطعام:

للسؤال بمعنى ماذا تريد نستخدم:

What would you like?

وللإجابة:

- I would like some carrots, please.

للسؤال بمعنى هل تريد:

- Would you like an orange?

للموافقة:

- Yes, please.

للرفض:

- No, thanks.

3 للسؤال بمعنى هل يوجد؟



Are there + اسم جمع....?
Is there + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد....?

- Are there any apples?
- Yes, there are. إجابة في الإثبات:
- No, there aren't. إجابة في النفي:
- Is there any milk?
- Yes, there is. إجابة في الاثبات:
- No, there isn't. إجابة في النفي:



Study the following

1. What would you like? — ماذا تريد؟
2. I would like some carrots, please. — أريد بعض الجزر، من فضلك.
3. Are there any tomatoes? — هل هناك أي طماطم؟
4. How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too? — ماذا عن شراء بعض الليمون والأناناس أيضًا؟
5. That's all I need for now. — هذا كل ما أحتاجه الآن.
6. I would like some potatoes and some onions, please. — أريد بعض البطاطس وبعض البصل، من فضلك.
7. Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs. — تأكد من تناول نظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.
8. Why is it important to eat healthy food? — لماذا من المهم تناول طعام صحي؟
9. How do you make sensible food choices? — كيف تتخذ خيارات غذائية معقولة؟

1 Listen and write the names:
استمع للنص الآتى واكتب الأسماء:

Amal - Nada - Ibrahim - Ashraf

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

----------- ----------- ----------- -----------

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Narrator 1:

Market trader : Lovely[1] tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

Mom : Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

Market trader : They're a good price[2]: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

Arabic Meaning
١- جميل
٢- سعر

Mom : OK. We will have a kilogram, please.
Market trader : How about buying some carrots too?
Mom : No, thank you.
Ibrahim : Mom, please can we have a pineapple?
Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy(3) pineapple.
Market trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

Narrator 2:

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.
Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.
Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.
Grandma : I know. I'm lucky(4) to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?
Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia(5) later. Have you got any coconut?
Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

٣- كثير العصارة
٤-محظوظ
٥- مهلبية
٦- ثلاجة
٧- قائمة
٨- حتى

Narrator 3:

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?
Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?
Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.
Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!
Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the fridge(6)?
Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

Narrator 4

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?
Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.
Dad : Here are the lemons.
Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!
Dad : Is it on Mom's list(7)?
Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?
Dad : OK, but don't eat it until(8) after dinner, Amal!

2 Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

استمع للنص السابق مرة آخرى. اكمل الجمل بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - koshari - mahalabia - mango - onions - pineapple - tomatoes

1- Ibrahim and his mom buy ---------- tomatoes ---------- and a ----------.

2- Nada doesn't have a ---------- tree in her garden.

3- Nada wants ---------- for dessert.

4- Ashraf and his mom need to buy bread, rice, and ----------.

5- Ashraf wants ---------- for lunch.

6- ---------- is not on Amal's mom's list.

3 Listen and check (✓) the things Jana and her mom have:

استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الأشياء التى لدى جنى ووالدتها:





استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Jana, can you help me unpack[1] the bags, please?

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

Mom : Put that in the cupboard[2], please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

Jana : OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl[3] on the table.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight[4]? I bought a bag of nuts.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!

Arabic Meaning

١- يفرغ
٢- خزانة
٣- طبق فاكهة
٤- الليلة

1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐

6 ☐ 7 ☑ 8 ☐ 9 ☐ 10 ☐

4 Read the food diaries. Order them from 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest):

اقرأ الوجبات اليومية ورتبهم من ١ (أكثر الأطعمة صحيًا) إلى ٣ (أكثر الأطعمة غير الصحية):

a ☐
Breakfast: ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
Lunch: koshari, salad, an orange
Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad

b ☐
Breakfast: 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese
Lunch: burger and french fries
Dinner: pizza

c ☐
Breakfast: cheese and bread, cucumber, jam
Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice
Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake

Tip!

- **Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.**

تأكد انك تتناول نظام غذائى صحى حتى يحصل جسدك على العناصر الغذائية التى يحتاجها.

Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ My shopping list

Grammar — قواعد لغوية

Countable & Uncountable nouns

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

أولا : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها Countable nouns

– الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an

a / an

– نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- a banana موزة
- a lemon ليمونة

– نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

– الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- an orange
- an apple

– الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s — es — ies — ves — جمع شاذ

– كيف نكِّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التى تعد:

– إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

– أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

s – x – ch – sh – ss – o

bus	→	buses	beach	→	beaches
tomato	→	tomatoes	glass	→	glasses

– أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

– أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

y + حرف ساكن (candy) → ~~y~~ ies candies

y + حرف متحرك (boy) → ys (boys)

- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلى:

leaf	⟶	leaves

knife	⟶	knives

- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هى:

mouse	⟶	mice	foot	⟶	feet
man	⟶	men	woman	⟶	women
child	⟶	children	tooth	⟶	teeth

ثانيًا : الأسماء التى لا تعد Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / rice / milk / chocolate / yogurt / jam / honey / soup / bread

koshari / mahalabia

some / any

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتى بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some apples, please.
- I would like some rice, please.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أى) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتى بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Are there any tomatoes?
- We haven't got any grapes.

A lot of / lots of

- يأتي بعد a lot of / lots of اما اسم جمع او اسم مفرد لا يعد.

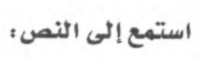
- I bought a lot of apples.
- I ate lots of rice.



1 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:





❶





❷

Are there any tomatoes?

Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.

❸



❹



2 Look and circle the correct words:

انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Are there any **tomato** / **tomatoes**?
2. I would like **some** / **any** eggs, please.
3. Please, can I have **a** / **an** apple?
4. I would like **a** / **an** pineapple and **a** / **an** orange.
5. Do you have **a** / **any** carrots, please?
6. How about **buy** / **buying** an apple, Mom?
7. How about buying some **grapes** / **grape**?



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Omar's family was .... at home today.
   - a angry
   - b busy
   - c unhappy
   - d healthy
2. They ate .... in the morning.
   - a koshari
   - b cake
   - c ful medames
   - d burger
3. In the ...., they ate french fries.
   - a evening
   - b morning
   - c afternoon
   - d summer
4. They watched TV after ....
   - a lunch
   - b breakfast
   - c dinner
   - d snack

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Lana wants chocolate for ....
   - a desert
   - b dessert
   - c dress
   - d drums
2. **A:** How much are the tomatoes? **B:** They're a good .... الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة (2024)
   - a prize
   - b price
   - c market
   - d tree
3. She went to the .... to buy some vegetables.
   - a restaurant
   - b park
   - c beach
   - d market
4. I love watermelons because they are always ....
   - a salty
   - b juicy
   - c bad
   - d unhealthy
5. Mom always writes a .... of things she needs from the market.
   - a list
   - b book
   - c menu
   - d letter
6. Fatma helps her mom .... the bags.
   - a unpack
   - b unhappy
   - c cook
   - d burn

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Jana. I'm in grade five. I always **get up** at six. I have breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger and vegetables for lunch. My sister always helps my mom in the kitchen.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Jana's sister has ....for breakfast.
   - a burger
   - b fried eggs
   - c yogurt
   - d pizza

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. The underlined phrase "get up" means ....

a wake up b sleep c run d eat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Jana go in the afternoon? ....

4. Who always helps mom in the kitchen? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. would - What - like - you? ....
2. there - tomatoes - Are - any? ....
3. some - , please - would - like - I - carrots. ....
4. some - about - lemons - How - buying? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I want .... (an) pineapple.
2. I would like .... (any) rice, please. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط (2024)
3. There is .... (a) water on the floor. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2024)
4. I eat .... (a) apple every day. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس (2024)
5. .... (Is) there any mangoes on the tree?
6. I .... (am) like some bananas, please.
7. How about .... (eats) healthy food?
8. Amal doesn't have .... (some) onions.
9. Are there any .... (grape) ?
10. I would like .... (any) bread.
11. Do you have .... (some) potatoes?
12. Is there .... (some) juice in the fridge? بني سويف - إدارة سمسطا (2024)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. no thanks. ....
2. would you like some juice, Amir ....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy and unhealthy food مجاب آخر الوحدة

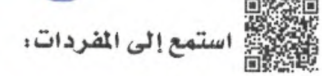
Guiding phrases

- eat lots of fruit - chocolate for dessert

....
....
....

Lesson 3 ★ Jack and the Beanstalk

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:




beanstalk ساق الفاصوليا

castle قلعة



giant عملاق



chop يقطع



cage قفص



grab ينتزع / يمسك



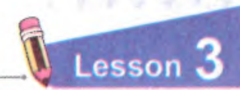

Adjectives صفات

poor	فقير
rich	غني
special	خاص / مميز
angry	غاضب
golden	ذهبي
magic	سحر / سحرى
terrible	فظيع
free	حر / طليق
kind	عطوف



Other words كلمات أخرى

market	سوق
cow	بقرة
price	سعر
on the way to	في الطريق إلى
cloud	سحابة
go to bed	ينام
top	قمة
inside	بالداخل
suddenly	فجأة
gold coins	عملات ذهبية
as soon as	بمجرد
axe	فأس
anymore	لم يعد



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
climb	يتسلق	climbe
count	يعد	counted
cry	يصيح / يصرخ	cried
save	ينقذ	saved
reach	يصل إلى	reached
grab	يمسك بـ / ينتزع	grabbed
chop	يقطع	chopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
sell	يبيع	sold
say	يقول	said
get	يحصل على	got
meet	يقابل	met
buy	يشترى	bought
throw	يرمى	threw
see	يرى	saw
fall	يسقط	fell

Definitions تعريفات

giant	عملاق	a very, very big person
grab	يمسك بـ / ينتزع	to pick something up quickly
castle	قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago
chop	يقطع	to cut something down
cage	قفص	a box in which we keep animals



Study the following

1. **Jack and his mother were very poor.** - كان جاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية.
2. **On the way to the market, Jack met an old man.** - التقى جاك برجل عجوز في الطريق إلى السوق.
3. **I have these special beans.** - لدي هذه الفاصوليا المميزة.
4. **They will make you rich!** - سوف تجعلك غنيا!
5. **He was sad and very hungry.** - كان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.
6. **The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden.** - في صباح اليوم التالي ، رأى جاك شجرة (ساق) فاصوليا طويلة جدًا في الحديقة.
7. **At the very top, he saw a castle.** - رأى قلعة في القمة.
8. **Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant.** - فجأة ، رأى جاك عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا.

9 He was counting bags of gold coins. - كان يعد أكياس عملات ذهبية.

10 As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe.

- بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته ، أمسك بفأسه.

11 The giant fell on the ground and ran away. - سقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب.

12 Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. - لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء بعد الآن.

13 They sold the golden eggs to buy food. - باعوا البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام.

14 Jack and his mother lived happily ever after. - عاش جاك ووالدته في سعادة دائمة.

1 Listen and read. What did Jack get for his cow?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا حصل جاك مقابل بيع بقرته؟



استمع إلى النص:

1



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow,"said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

2



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

3



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans !" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry , Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a **castle**. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big **giant**. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a **cage**. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!". "I'll help you!" said Jack.



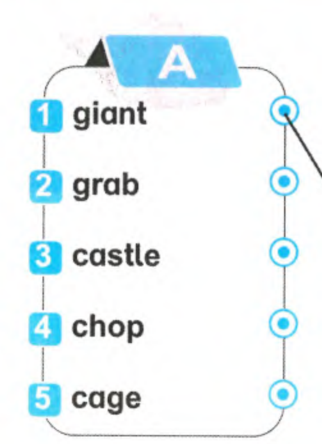
As soon as Jack reached his garden, he **grabbed** his axe. He **chopped** down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?"
Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

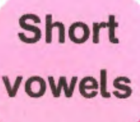
2 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط عريض. صلها بمعانيها.



A	B
1 giant	a. very large building built a long time ago
2 grab	b. to cut something down
3 castle	c. a box in which we keep animals
4 chop	d. a very, very big person
5 cage	e. to pick something up quickly

Pronunciation



Short vowels

Long vowels

Short a / æ /



cat قطة

candy حلوى

mango مانجو

Long a [a-e / ai / ay] /eI/



cake تورتة

grape حبة عنب

snake ثعبان

bake يخبز

snail حلزون

rain مطر

tail ذيل

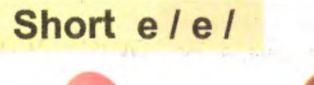
pain ألم

gray رمادى

play يلعب

say يقول

stay يبقى / يقيم



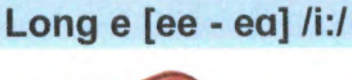
Short e / e /



egg بيضة



bread خبز



Long e [ee - ea] /i:/



bean حبة فول



meat لحم

Short i / I /



milk لبن



fish سمك

Long i [i-e - igh] /ai/



lime ليمون أخضر



rice أرز

Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

cake	a_e	snake
rain	ai	pain
gray	ay	stay

لاحظ

- هناك كلمات تشترك في أحد الأصوات وتختلف في الحروف:

cake → bake   rain → pain   snail → tail

bean → meat   gray → stay

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

❶  c a ke

❷  l _me

❸  b_ _n

❹  gr_pe

❺  _gg

❻ 

m_lk

❼  r_ce

❽  c_ndy



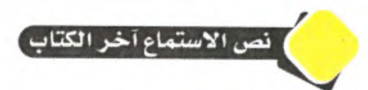
2 Say. Then circle the odd one out:

قل ثم ضع دائرة على الكلمة المختلفة (في النطق):

1. grape egg bread
2. mango egg candy
3. fish meat bean
4. lime rice cake

3 Read. Then listen and complete:

اقرأ ثم استمع واكمل:





استمع إلى النص:

1. I s _ _, 'Let's pl _ _!'
2. Let's b _ ke a c _ ke.
3. Sn _ _ ls have t _ _ ls.

MATH

Decimal Fractions الكسور العشرية

- درسنا فيما سبق الكسر حيث يتكون من بسط ومقام.

$\frac{1}{6}$ — 1 → numerator بسط ; 6 → denominator مقام

- إذا كان لدينا 4 تفاحات ونريد تقسيمها على ولدان (2) فإن رقم (4) هو البسط ورقم (2) هو المقام.
- $\frac{4}{2} = 2$ إذا نصيب كل ولد 2 تفاحة وهذا عدد صحيح.
- لكن إذا كان لدينا تفاحتين (2) وأردنا قسمتها على (4) أولاد:-
- $\frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$ أى أن نصيب كل ولد نصف تفاحة وهذا يمثل كسر وليس عدد صحيح.
- أما الكسر العشرى فيبدأ برقم ثم علامة عشرية ثم باقى الرقم (32.50 / 1.70 / 0.40 / 0.30)

1 Look, read, and remember decimal fractions:

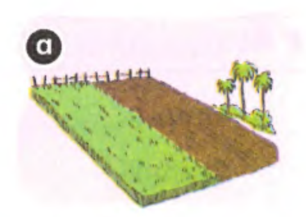
انظر واقرأ وتذكر الكسور العشرية:

- يمكن كتابة الكسر على شكل كسر عشرى كما يلى:

$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$ $\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$ $\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$

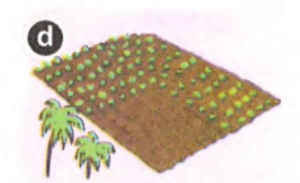
$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$ $\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$

2 Look, read and write the fractions: انظر واقرأ واكتب الكسور:





Amir: $\frac{1}{2}$ = 0.50 ______________ ______________





______________ ______________ ______________

1. Walaa planted $\frac{1}{3}$ of her field.
2. Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.
3. Tarek planted $\frac{1}{4}$ of his field.
4. Lubna planted $\frac{1}{5}$ of her field.
5. Sherif planted $\frac{3}{4}$ of his field.
6. Manar planted $\frac{2}{5}$ of her field.

3 Think and write: فكر واكتب:

Did you know?
0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400

1. $\frac{1}{3}$ = 1÷3 = 0.333
2. $\frac{1}{2}$ = ________ = ________
3. $\frac{1}{4}$ = ________ = ________
4. $\frac{1}{5}$ = ________ = ________
5. $\frac{3}{4}$ = ________ = ________
6. $\frac{2}{5}$ = ________ = ________



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A .... is a very big person. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة (2024))
   a giant   b poor   c rich   d small
2. When you .... something, you pick it up quickly. (الدقهلية - إدارة أجا (2024))
   a chop   b grab   c plant   d grow
3. Ali is very .... .He has a lot of money. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024))
   a poor   b clever   c rich   d bad
4. My favorite fruit is .... (القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024))
   a fish   b potatoes   c grapes   d candy
5. Dogs and cats have ....
   a beaks   b tails   c feathers   d eggs
6. Let's .... a cake.
   a climb   b cry   c grab   d bake
7. I always help my mother .... the vegetables.
   a climb   b meet   c chop   d talk
8. A .... is a very large building built a long time ago.
   a castle   b car   c tree   d cage

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rich - cage - poor - giant - angry

Jack and his mother didn't have money. They were ❶ .... Jack saw a very big ❷ .... He also saw a hen in the ❸ .... Next to the hen was a golden egg. Jack took the hen and sold the golden eggs. Jack became ❹ .... at the end.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, Samy went to the library to read books. He borrowed a book about a famous rich man called Jack. When Jack was a child, he was poor. His mother

gave him a cow to sell it and get money to buy food. He met an old man and gave him bean seeds. Jack put the bean seeds in his garden. The next day, he found a very tall beanstalk. He climbed the beanstalk and found a hen with golden eggs. He took it and sold the eggs, then he became very rich.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Jack found a .... on the beanstalk.
   a) dog b) cat c) hen d) bag
2. Jack put the bean seeds in the ....
   a) library b) garden c) market d) beanstalk

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Samy go yesterday? ....
4. How did Jack become rich? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

القليوبية - إدارة طوخ (2024)

1. wanted - sell - Jack - cow - to - the.
....
2. saw - Jack - giant - big - a very
....
3. his mother - were - Jack - very - and - poor.
....
4. was counting - gold - He - coins - bags - of.
....
5. the golden - They - eggs - sold - food - to buy.
....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. let s play.
....
2. What did jack get for his cow
....

Lesson 4 Writing

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


molokhia ملوخية


weigh out يزن المقادير


mix يخلط


pour يصب/يسكب


butter زبد


bake يخبز


boil يغلى


cut يقطع

Other words كلمات أخرى



basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شراب (سائل محلى)
recipe	وصفة طعام	a tablespoon = tbsp	ملعقة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	lentil soup	حساء عدس
semolina	سميد	oven	فرن
yogurt	ذبادى	by hand	باليد
sugar	سكر	mixture	خليط
melted butter	زبدة مذابة	knife	سكين
baking powder	مسحوق الخبز	diamond shape	شكل ماسى (معين)
coconut	جوز هند	pretty	جميل
almonds	لوز	lemon juice	عصير ليمون
teaspoon = tsp	ملعقة شاى	saucepan	طاسة
such as	مثل	mintue	دقيقة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cook	يطهو	cooked
bake	يخبز	baked
turn on	يشغل	turned on
weigh out	يزن المقادير	weighed out
mix	يخلط	mixed
add	يضيف	added
pour	يصب / يسكب	poured
boil	يغلي	boiled
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
make	يصنع / يعد طعام	made
take out	يخرج	took out
cut	يقطع	cut

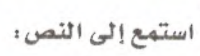
Study the following

1. What is the recipe for? - لأي طعام هذه الوصفة ؟
2. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. - افضل شئ احب خبزه هو البسبوسة.
3. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. - أولاً ، تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه.
4. You should mix these ingredients by hand. - يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد.
5. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. - ثم تضيف الزبادي وتسكب الخليط في طبق للخبز.
6. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. - يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل أشكال على شكل (معين) فوق البسبوسة.
7. Put an almond on each diamond. - ضع حبة لوز على كل شكل ماسة (معين).
8. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. - اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة 30 دقيقة.
9. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. - اغلي الخليط لمدة 10 دقائق.
10. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. - ثم نصب الشراب على البسبوسة.
11. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family! - قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك!

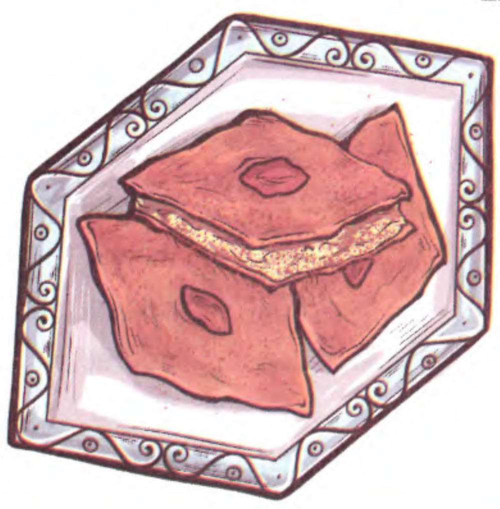
1 Look and read. What is the recipe for?:

انظر و اقرأ لأي طعام هذه الوصفة؟









INGREDIENTS

2 cups semolina

1 cup yogurt

$\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar

$\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter

1 tsp baking powder

1 cup coconut

almonds

Syrup

$\frac{3}{4}$ cup water

2 tbsp honey

My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!
Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.
You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa.
Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan.
Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hala went to the kitchen to .... a cake.
   a buy   b make   c do   d write
2. We use a .... to cut vegetables.
   a spoon   b cage   c glass   d knife
3. I want to .... basbousa.
   a bake   b boil   c turn on   d plant
4. Mona .... out the ingredients. They were one kilogram.
   a boiled   b cut   c weighed   d baked
5. If you .... two colors, you get a new one.
   a boil   b weigh   c mix   d cut
6. We .... syrup over the basbousa. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية (2024)
   a bake   b cut   c pour   d chop

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

oven - delicious - ingredients - spicy - hand   قنا - إدارة دشنا (2024)

My favorite recipe is basbousa. Mum buys the 1 .... from the supermarket. She mixes these ingredients by 2 .... Then, she bakes the basbousa in the 3 .... for 30 minutes. She makes the syrup for 10 minutes. Finally, she pours the syrup over the basbousa. It is very 4 ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Nour. I'm twelve years old. I have one brother and one sister. Last Friday was my mom's birthday. My sister, my brother and I made her a nice cake. We used flour, milk, butter, sugar, eggs and chocolate. First, we mixed the ingredients well by hand. Next, we poured the mixture into a baking dish. After that, we baked it in the oven for 30 minutes. Finally, we cut it in different shapes. It was delicious. Mom was very happy. All the family liked it. الغربية - إدارة سمنود (2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mom's birthday was ---------- .

a today   b yesterday   c last Friday   d tomorrow

2. They didn't use ---------- in making the cake.

a butter   b syrup   c flour   d eggs

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How long did they take to bake the cake?

----

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. ingredients - the - Mix - hand - by.

----

2. your - on - hot - Turn - oven - to get - it.

----

3. almond - Put - diamond - on each - an.

----

4. the mixture - for - minutes - Boil - about - 10.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

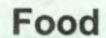
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- what is the recipe for, Fatma

2- we cook lentil soup, ful medames and molokhia

Review

Food الطعام




chocolate
شيكولاتة


carrots
جزر


lemons
ليمون أصفر


limes
ليمون أخضر


beans
فول


pineapples
أناناس


cookies
كعك محلى


coconuts
جوز الهند


onions
بصل


watermelons
بطيخ


mangoes
مانجو


koshari
كشرى

Jack and the Beanstalk


beanstalk
ساق الفاصوليا


castle
قلعة


giant
عملاق


chop
يقطع


cage
قفص


grab
يمسك/ينتزع

Writing


molokhia
ملوخية


weigh out
يزن المقادير

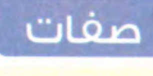

mix
يخلط

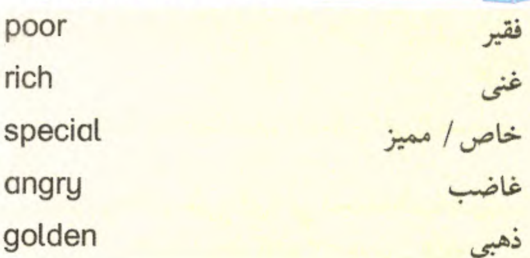

boil
يغلى


pour
يصب/يسكب


bake
يخبز

ADJECTIVES صفات





poor	فقير	magic	سحر / سحرى
rich	غنى	terrible	فظيع
special	خاص / مميز	free	حر / طليق
angry	غاضب	kind	عطوف
golden	ذهبى	easy	سهل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
unpack	يفرغ	unpacked
cry	يصيح / يصرخ	cried
grab	يمسك بـ / ينتزع	grabbed
chop	يقطع	chopped
turn on	يشغل	turned on
weigh out	يزن المقادير	weighed out
pour	يصب / يسكب	poured
boil	يغلى	boiled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يملك	had
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought
meet	يقابل	met
throw	يرمى	threw
fall	يسقط	fell
cut	يقطع	cut

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



نستخدم للإقتراح

How about + V + ing...........?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a bottle of milk.

2 للسؤال بمعنى هل يوجد ...؟ نستخدم:

Are there + اسم جمع....?
Is there + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد....?

- Are there any apples?
- Yes, there are. **إجابة في الإثبات:** - No, there aren't. **إجابة في النفي:**
- Is there any juice?
- Yes, there is. **إجابة في الإثبات:** - No, there isn't. **إجابة في النفي:**

Grammar قواعد لغوية

a / an

نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- **a mango** ثمرة مانجو **a carrot** جزرة

نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.
الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- **an onion** **an apple**

some / any

تستخدم كلمة **some** بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتى بعد **some** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some oranges, please.

وتستخدم **any** بمعنى (أى) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتى بعد **any** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Is there any milk? - We haven't got any nuts.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

Your favorite fruit

1. My favorite fruit is mango. It's healthy. We have a mango tree in our garden. My father waters the mango tree every day. When it grows, we eat some mangoes and sell some of them at the market. They are delicious fruit.

Lesson 2

Healthy and unhealthy food

2. I like healthy food. I eat meat, fruit and vegetables. We eat healthy food to keep our bodies well. We don't like unhealthy food. Chocolate, pizza and cola are unhealthy food. I like chocolate, but I don't eat too much.

Activity 1 - Unit 1

My favorite food

3. My favorite food is fish. It is a delicious meal. My mother buys fish from the market. She cleans fish well and cooks it for lunch. I think it is healthy. I like it with rice, bread and salad. I eat it a lot.

Al-Azhar Text

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ibrahim and his mom like going to the .... (park - market - shop)
2. Ibrahim and his mom buy .... (apples - sugar - vegetables)
3. In the morning, Ibrahim likes to drink .... (water - tea - milk)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

lots - any - like - carrots

A : Hello, what would you ....?

B : I would like some ....

A : Are there .... tomatoes?

B : Yes, there are .... of tomatoes.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Marwa is my sister. She is twenty years old. Yesterday, she went to the market with my mother to buy mangoes. They bought two kilos of mangoes to make mango juice. The mangoes were thirty pounds a kilo. Marwa made the juice. We drank it. It was delicious.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Marwa? ....
2. When did Marwa go to the market? ....

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Marwa bought some .... (apples - bananas - mangoes)
4. Marwa made delicious .... (molokhia - juice - soup)

5. Two kilos of mangoes were ---------- pounds. (30 - 60 - 20)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I would ---------- an orange.

a like   b likes   c liked

2. Ahmed's favorite dessert is ----------.

a milk   b water   c chocolate

3. ---------- I have some lemons?

a Can   b Was   c Am

4. Is there ---------- juice?

a an   b some   c any

5. ---------- the syrup of basbousa for about ten minutes.

a Cut   b Boil   c Bake

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - for - What - the recipe?

----

2. tomatoes - Are - any - there?

----

3. love - baking - basbousa - I .

----

4. about - some - carrots - How - buying?

----

5. buy - juicy - Let's - pineapple - a nice



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I like helping my mother to cook these ....
   a ingredients b meals c snacks d recipes
2. We can make molokhia into ....
   a soup b yogurt c juice d honey
3. We can put yogurt in the mixture of the ....
   a basbousa b molokhia c koshari d lentils
4. All these meals make our bodies ....
   a free b healthy c unhealthy d terrible

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nadia wants .... for dessert.
   a mahalabia b onions c koshari d lemons
2. We want baking .... to make basbousa.
   a soup b powder c juice d honey
3. We buy .... to make delicious juice.
   a beans b mangoes c eggs d nuts
4. It's .... to eat a balanced diet. قنا - ادارة قوص (2024)
   a healthy b unhealthy c bad d toxic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

vegetables - good - unhealthy - little - many

It's very important to eat healthy food. We should eat lots of fruit and 1 .... every day. It's 2 .... to eat chocolate or drink cola. Some people like chocolate very much, but they should eat a 3 .... It isn't 4 .... if you eat a lot.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Ahmed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his grandpa grows tomatoes, carrots and onions. There are lemons, lime

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

and mango trees as well. Ahmed's favorite healthy fruit is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. He also uses it to make fruit salad, cakes and mahalabia. Ahmed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK if he eats a little.

الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر (2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Ahmed lives in a big ....
   a house   b farm   c garden   d school
2. There are lemons and .... trees in the garden
   a carrot   b lime   c chocolate   d tomatoes

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ahmed's grandpa grow? ....
4. What can Ahmed use mango for? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

بني سويف - إدارة الواسطى (2024)

1. is - food - What - favorite - your? ....
2. a mango - have - We - garden - tree - in the. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I would like .... (any) carrots, please.
2. There are some .... (tomato) in the market.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what would you like to eat, Sameh ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My favorite food

Guiding phrases

- delicious meal
- fish with rice

....

....

....



I discover myself

I want to be healthy!

أريد أن اتمتع بصحة جيدة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

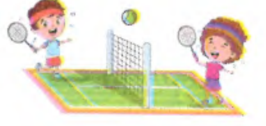
1. Listen, read, research, and write about sports.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الرياضات.
2. Talk about sports I'm good or bad at.
- يتحدث الطالب عن الرياضات قائلا انا جيد فى أو انا سيئ فى.
3. Read and listen to a science fiction story.
- يقرأ ويستمع الطالب إلى قصة خيال علمي.
4. Learn how to say single-syllable words.
- يتعلم الطالب كيف ينطق كلمات ذات مقطع صوتى واحد.
5. Write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
- يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.
6. Give a presentation about how to help my local environment.
- يقدم الطالب عرضاً تقديمياً عن مساعدة بيئته المحلية.

Lesson 1 Part 1 ★ Sports

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


karate الكاراتيه


tennis التنس

football كرة القدم


squash الاسكواش

Sports
الألعاب الرياضية


swimming السباحة


kung fu رياضة الكونج فو


handball كرة اليد


sailing الابحار

club	نادي	awesome	رائع / مذهل
look fun	يبدو ممتعاً	on TV	في التليفزيون



ADJECTIVES صفات

good at	جيد في	worse at	اسوأ في
bad at	سيئ في	great	عظيم
better at	افضل في	favorite	مفضل

Help your child learn about sports. ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن الرياضات.

Other words كلمات أخرى

Me too!	وأنا أيضاً	like	مثل
What about ....?	ماذا عن؟	game	مباراة / لعبة
What time ?	ما الوقت؟	later	فيما بعد / لاحقاً
sport	رياضة	match	مباراة
most popular	الأكثر شهرة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
play	يلعب	played
try	يجرب	tried
watch	يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
am / is / are	يكون	was / were
win	يفوز	won

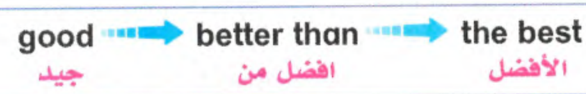
Language Functions وظائف لغوية

لموافقة فيما قال المتحدث:

- Me too! وأنا أيضاً!
- So do I. وأنا كذلك.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة:



- I'm better at tennis than I'm at football.
- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.
- I am the best at tennis.

bad → worse than → the worst
سئ — اسوأ من — الأسوأ

- I think kung fu is worse than karate.

Study the following

1 What are you watching?
- ماذا تشاهد؟

2 I love squash!
- أحب الإسكواش.

3 Who is winning?
- من في طريقه للفوز؟

4 She is very good at playing squash.
- إنها جيدة جداً في لعبة الاسكواش.

5 What sport are you good at?
- ما هي الرياضة التي تجيدها؟

6 I'm very good at playing tennis.
- أنا جيد في لعب التنس.

7 I'm better at tennis than I am at football.
- أنا أفضل في لعب التنس عن كرة القدم.

8 Let's go to the club later.
- هيا نذهب الى النادي لاحقاً.

9 My favorites are swimming and sailing.
- الرياضات المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار.

10 Sailing looks fun!
- رياضة الإبحار تبدو ممتعة!

11 Great! So what time do you want to play football
- عظيم! لذلك ما الوقت الذى تريده للعب كرة القدم؟

12 See you in the club later!
- أراك لاحقاً في النادي.

13 What is the most popular sport in Egypt?
- ما اكثر رياضة مشهورة في مصر؟

1 Listen and read. Number the sports in the photos in the order Seleem and Wael talk about them:

استمع واقرأ ورقم الرياضات في الصور طبقاً لذكرها في النص:



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



Seleem: What are you watching?
Wael : An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini – it's great. I love squash!
Seleem: Me too! Who's winning?
Wael : Raneem – she's very good at playing squash.
Seleem: I know. What sport are you good at?
Wael : I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?
Seleem: I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.
Wael : So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.
Seleem: Yes, let's go to the club later.
Wael : Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
Seleem: I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
Wael : My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
Seleem: Great! So what time do you want to play football?
Wael : About five?
Seleem: Awesome – see you in the club later!

a  karate ☐

b  squash  1

c  sailing ☐

d  kung fu ☐

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هذه كرة قدم الفقاعات. يمكنك أن تجرب العديد من الرياضات الغريبة. إنها ممتعة ويمكنها ان تحافظ على صحتك.





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My favorite sport is ....
   a tennis b squash c handball d football
2. I'm .... at football than swimming.
   a worse b better c greater d later
3. My .... is good at karate.
   a sister b friend c cousin d brother
4. We go together to the same ....
   a school b club c market d park

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They are .... at tennis. They can't play it at all. (المنوفية - إدارة اشمون (2024))
   a good b bad c great d best
2. I play football with my friends at the .... (القليوبية - إدارة قليوب (2024))
   a hospital b bank c club d museum
3. Football is the most popular .... in Egypt.
   a color b sport c job d subject
4. What sport are you good .... ?
   a on b at c up d for

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

love - better - popular - won - good

Yesterday, I watched a match about squash in the club. My friends Hoda and Reham are ❶.......................... at squash. Reham played well and ❷.......................... the match. I ❸.......................... squash, but I'm ❹.......................... at tennis.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - at - She - bad - kung fu. المنيا - إدارة سمالوط (2024)

---

2. watching - you - What - are?

---

3. go - Let's - club - to - later - the.

---

4. at - I - am - football - playing - good. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس (2024)

---

5. favorites - swimming - are - My - sailing - and.

---

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. seleem and wael like sport.

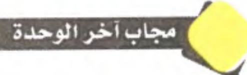
---

2. What sports do we have in egypt

---

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:



Your favorite sport

Guiding questions

1- What's your favorite sport?
2- Where do you play it?

Lesson 1 Part 2 ★ An Awful Nightmare!





استمع إلى المفردات:

air	الهواء	shade	ظل
emissions	انبعاثات	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
breathing	التنفس	nightmare	كابوس



Adjectives صفات

toxic	سام	awful	فظيع	asleep	نائم
dangerous	خطير	clean	نظيف	many	كثير (للعدد)
horrible	مفزع	dirty	قذر - متسخ	much	كثير (للكمية)

Other words كلمات أخرى



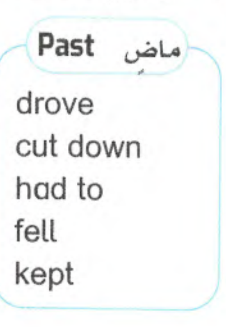
smell better	له رائحة افضل	problem	مشكلة
lungs	الرئتان	work hard	يعمل بجد
plastic	بلاستيك	get ready	يستعد
dream	حلم	planet	كوكب
in my heart	في قرارة نفسي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
protect	يحمي	protected
wait	ينتظر	waited
call	ينادي / يتصل	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
drive	يقود	drove
cut down	يقطع	cut down
have to	يجب أن	had to
fall	يسقط	fell
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Language Functions — وظائف لغوية

1 too + adj

- نستخدم (الصفة + too) للتحدث عن شئ أو صفة زائدة عن الحد بحيث لا يمكن تحملها.
- There are too many emissions from cars.
- The tea is too hot, I can't drink it.

2 because of — بسبب

- نستخدم (because of + noun (اسم)) وبعدها الأسم لبيان السبب.
- I didn't go to school because of the bad weather.

Definitions — تعريفات

toxic	سام	very bad to eat or breathe.
emissions	انبعاثات	gases from cars or factories.
shade	ظل	an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
nightmare	كابوس	a bad dream.
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	a glass building used for growing plants.
breathe	يتنفس	to move air into and out of your lungs.

Study the following

1. The air is black and toxic. — الهواء أسود وسام.
2. There are too many emissions from cars. — يوجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الخارجة من السيارات.
3. It's dangerous for children's lungs. — هذا خطير على رئة الاطفال.
4. We only have fruit from greenhouses. — نحصل على الفاكهة فقط من الصوب الزراعية.
5. It was an awful nightmare. — كان كابوس فظيع.
6. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more. — نستطيع استخدام سياراتنا اقل ونستخدم الدراجات اكثر.
7. We need to look after our planet. — نحتاج إلى الاعتناء بكوكبنا.



1 Listen and read:

استمع و اقرأ:



Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:





I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and **toxic**(1). There are too many **emissions**(2) from cars. It's **dangerous**(3) for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his **breathing**(4).

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much **plastic**(5) in it and it is dirty. Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their **shade**(6) on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from **greenhouses**(7) and we can't sit outside any more.

But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to **get ready**(8) for school! It was all **an awful nightmare**(9)! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my **dream**(10) and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!

Arabic Meaning

١- سام
٢- انبعاثات
٣- خطير
٤- التنفس
٥- بلاستيك
٦- ظل
٧- صوب زراعية
٨- يستعد
٩- كابوس فظيع
١٠- حلم

2 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلي الكلمات بخط سميك. صل الكلمة بمعناها:

A	B
1 toxic	a. a bad dream
2 emissions	b. to move air into and out of your lungs.
3 shade	c. gases from cars or factories
4 nightmare	d. out of the sun
5 greenhouse	e. very bad to eat or breathe
6 breathe	f. a glass building used for growing plants



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The air is black and ---------- . الإسكندرية - إدارة العصافرة (2024)

a delicious b clear c beautiful d toxic

2. A ---------- is a bad dream. البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة (2024)

a nightmare b shade c planet d greenhouse

3. ---------- are gasses from cars or factories. الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات (2024)

a Fireworks b Ingredients c Emissions d Crops

4. We sit under the ---------- of this tree and have lunch.

a shade b share c shape d shore

5. We can't go to school because ---------- the rain.

a off b of c with d to

6. The child is ---------- in bed and has a bad dream.

a asleep b dangerous c bad d good

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

toxic - shade - emissions - house - breathing

Our city is polluted. There are too many ❶ .... from cars. The air is black and ❷ .... Children are ill because of problems with ❸ .... We need to plant more trees. Trees help clean the air and we can sit in their ❹ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

People in Cairo want to live in clean air and smell better. But the air is black and toxic. There's too much traffic. There are too many emissions from cars and factories. Children can't swim in the sea because of plastic. So we should solve the problem by using more bikes and planting more trees. We should keep our sea clean, too.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The air in Cairo is ---------- because of traffic.

a white b toxic c fresh d clear

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. We should use more .... in Cairo.

a bikes b emissions c plastic d pollution

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't children swim in the sea?

....

4. How should you keep the air clean?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. can't - We - go - outside.

....

2. and - is - The - black - toxic - air.

....

3. going - the - We're - to - today - park.

....

4. planet - We - need - look after - to - our.

....

5. emissions - are - There - too - many.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I can't go outside because .... (off) the rain.
2. There are .... (two) many emissions from cars.
3. It's time to .... (getting) ready for school.
4. We need to .... (looked) after our planet.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we can t sit outside any more.

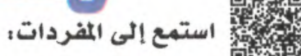
....

2. what do you think of the story, Adel

....

Lesson 2 ★ I'm good at ...

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:





climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار



jump
يقفز



do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة



walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء



cook
يطهو / يطبخ



draw
يرسم



Other words كلمات أخرى

poem	قصيدة شعرية	do karate	يلعب الكاراتيه
French	اللغة الفرنسية	make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
Arabic	اللغة العربية	singing	الغناء
taekwondo	لعبة التايكوندو	team	فريق
chess	شطرنج	table tennis	تنس الطاولة
do math	يحل مسائل رياضيات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
climb	يتسلق	climbed
cook	يطهو	cooked
walk	يمشي	walked
jump	يقفز	jumped
practice	يمارس	practiced
tidy	يرتب	tidied

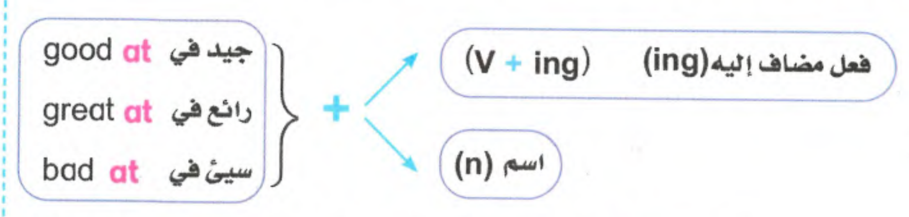
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
do	يفعل / يدرس / يحل	did
draw	يرسم	drew
read	يقرأ	read
make	يُعد (طعام)	made
sing	يغني	sang
write	يكتب	wrote
speak	يتحدث	spoke

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 good at / great at / bad at

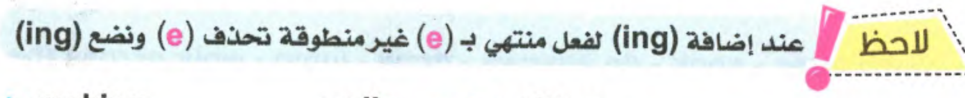
◉ نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله :



- I'm good **at playing** football. / I'm good **at football**.

◉ يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is great **at writing** poems.
- They are bad **at tennis**.



make → making write → writing

see → seeing لكن لاحظ: لم يحذف حرف (e) لأنه منطوق.

لاحظ: إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل اضافة (ing).

sit → sitting swim → swimming

2 because

◉ نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- **Why** are you good at table tennis?

وللاجابة نستخدم:

نتيجة ← **because** → سبب

- I'm good at table tennis **because** I can move fast.

3 but & and

◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة

أي أنها تضيف للمعنى:

- I play tennis **and** basketball.
- I like fruit **and** vegetables.

◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, **but** it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, **but** I like fruit.

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

1 Complete the sentences: اكمل الجمل :

1. I'm good at playing (play) football.
2. My sister is very good at .... (write) poems.
3. Sami's bad at .... (speak) French!
4. They're great at .... (help) their mom in the kitchen.

2 Look and write. Use good at, bad at, great at, and the phrases in the box:

انظر واكتب الجمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية :

~~climb trees~~ - cook - do jigsaws - draw - jump - walk across the desert

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

1. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.
2. Cats are good at ________________.
3. Camels ________________.
4. Mazen ________________.
5. Reem ________________.
6. Dad ________________.



3 Look and listen. Match the people to what they are good or bad at. Write D (Dalia), A (Aser), or S (Salma)

اكتب D أو A أو S :

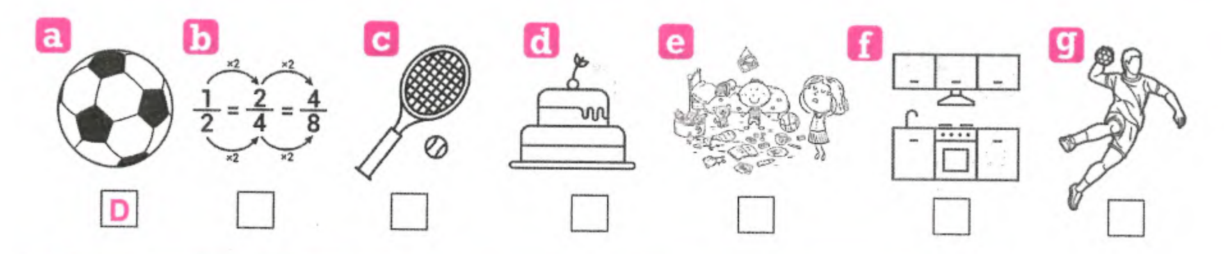


Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Dalia : Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he's bad at helping me in the kitchen! My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!



4 Listen again, and complete the sentences:

استمع (للنص السابق) مرة اخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good .... playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.

2. Aser is my brother. He's .... at playing tennis, and he's bad at .... me in the kitchen!

3. My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's .... at tidying her room!

CLIL: MATH

Adding and subtracting decimals
جمع وطرح الأعداد العشرية

◉ عند جمع أو طرح الأعداد العشرية تعامل مع الرقم مثل الأعداد الكاملة (بدون علامة عشرية) ولكن اجعل العلامة العشرية في الرقمين سواء كان جمع أو طرح تحت بعضهما تماماً كما في المثال:

```
  10.512          2.367
-  8.145        + 8.145
 -------        -------
   2.367         10.512
```

◉ يجب أن يتوافق موضع العلامة العشرية في الرقم الجديد (الناتج) مع وضعه في الأرقام الأصلية كما في المثال:

أولاً الجمع:

```
  7.2
+ 2.4
 ----
  9.6
```

◉ إذا كان ناتج جمع ما بعد العلامة العشرية في كلا الرقمين أكبر من الواحد فيضاف إلى الرقم الذي يسبق العلامة العشرية كالآتي:

2

```
  8  1  10
  7̸ . 9̸83
+ 5 . 432
 --------
 13 . 415
```

1

```
  7  1  1
  6̸ . 4̸
+ 2 . 7
 ------
  9 . 1
```

◉ لاحظ أنه بشكل عام عند الجمع أو الطرح نبدأ بآخر رقم في العدد الأول مع آخر رقم في العدد الثاني.

ثانياً الطرح: ادرس الأمثلة التالية جيداً:

3

	8.5
−	3.2
	5.3

4

	4 11 13
	15.23
−	11.46
	3.77

5

	60.678
−	50.356
	10.322

1 Circle the correct answers: ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. 7.983 + 5.432 = 13.415 / 134.15
2. 9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970 / 17.970
3. 60.678 − 50.356 = 103.22 / 10.322
4. 129.675 − 6.231 = 123.444 / 12.3444

2 Solve the problems: حل المسائل الآتية:

1. If one tree is **3.459** meters tall and another tree is **2.753** meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?

   3.459 − 2.753 = 0.706

2. Jihan ran **3.567** km on Sunday and **5.258** km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran? ....

3. Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs **2.657** kg and the other weighs **3.205** kg. Find:

   a. the total weight of both watermelons.

   ....

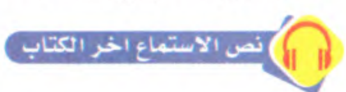
   b. the weight difference between the two watermelons.

   ....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Soha is good at making ....
   a salad b cakes c pizza d rice
2. Soha can help her mum in the ....
   a bedroom b kitchen c living room d balcony
3. Soha is bad at washing ....
   a the dishes b the clothes c the windows d the car
4. Soha's great at .... shawerma.
   a eating b buying c making d giving

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mona is bad at doing .... القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر (2024)
   a book b pen c math d nice
2. .... are good at climbing trees. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين (2024)
   a Cows b Elephants c Monkeys d Giraffes
3. They are great .... helping their mom.
   a at b of c on d for
4. Hisham is good at table tennis because he can .... fast.
   a draw b read c cook d move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

good - sleep - tidying - handball - doing

الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة (2024)

I'm Mona. I'm good at playing ❶ .... I'm bad at playing basketball. Ahmed is my brother. He is ❷ .... at playing, tennis but he is bad at helping me in the kitchen. My sister's name is Dalia. She's good at ❸ .... math. She is bad at ❹ .... her room.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - bad - What - you - at?

- -

2. is - He - good - football - at.

- -

3. bad - making - He - is - dinner - at.

- -

4. tiding - Hoda - her - good at - room - is.

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He's good at .... (does) math.
2. Ali is good .... (in) Arabic. البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2024)
3. I'm good at .... (play) football. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين (2024)
4. I like fruit .... (because) I don't like cola.
5. She is good at .... (swim) . الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد (2024)
6. I'm good at swimming .... (but) sailing.
7. Monkeys are good at .... (climb) trees. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة (2024)
8. We are bad .... (of) swimming.
9. Camels are great at .... (walked) across the desert.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The things you are good or bad at

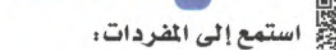
Guiding phrases

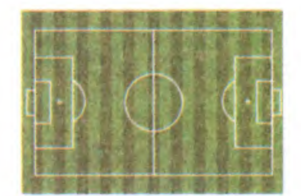
- helping mom
- drawing pictures

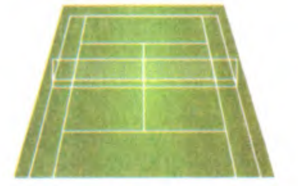
- -
- -
- -

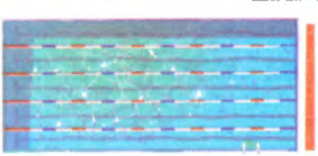
Lesson 3 ⭐ Sports places and equipment

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم


tennis court
ملعب التنس


swimming pool
حمام السباحة


karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


kung fu
رياضة الكونج فو


squash rackets
مضارب الاسكواش


swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة


tennis ball
كرة التنس



Other words كلمات أخرى

fast	سريع	summer	الصيف
really	حقاً	different	مختلف
high kicks	ركلات عالية (ضربات بالرجل أعلى الجسم)	walls	حوائط/ جدران
moves	حركات	go swimming	يذهب للسباحة

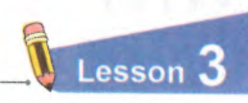
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
kick	يركل	kicked
practice	يمارس	practiced
rhyme	يقفي/ يسجع	rhymed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wear	يرتدي	wore
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went





Study the following

1. **Kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.**
   - الشئ المفضل بالنسبة لي هو ركل الكرة داخل ملعب كرة القدم .
2. **I like high kicks best.**
   - أفضل شئ أحبه هو الركلات العالية.
3. **I love this sport because I'm very good at it.**
   - احب هذه الرياضة لأنني اجيدها .
4. **I think it's an awesome sport.**
   - أعتقد انها رياضة رائعة.
5. **I feel like a different person.**
   - أشعر انني شخص مختلف.

1 Listen and match the speakers (A-E) to the photos in Exercise 1 (1-8). Some speakers match more than one photo

استمع وصل المتحدثين بالصور فى تمرين رقم (١) بالكتاب المدرسى صفحة (٢٨).

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Narrator: A
Boy 1: I love my sport – kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

Narrator: B
Girl 1: Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

Narrator: C
Boy 2: I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

Narrator: D
Girl 2: I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

Narrator: E
Boy 3: I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

2 Listen again and complete the sentences:

استمع (للنص السابق) مرة أخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. I love my sport – ......kicking...... a ball on a ......pitch...... is my favorite thing.
2. Being in a .... pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.
3. I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high .... best.
4. You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small ...., and you move very fast.
5. I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have .... in the park and I go there with my friends.

Pronunciation

Short a



man رجل cat قطة bat خفاش

Long a



pain ألم make يعمل

Short e



neck رقبة pen قلم جاف red لون احمر

Long e



tea شاى feet أقدام

Short i



swim يعوم fish سمكة milk لبن

Long i



light ضوء cry يبكى

Short o



sock جورب doll عروسة لعبة

Long o



rose وردة cone مخروط / قمع so لذلك

Short u



cup فنجان sun الشمس full ملئ

Long u



cube مكعب fuel وقود

Other words كلمات أخرى







teacher مُدرسة | robot انسان آلي | paper ورقة / ورق | spider عنكبوت

ندرس في هذا الدرس عدد الأصوات داخل الكلمات (لاحظ هناك فرق بين عدد الأصوات وعدد المقاطع الصوتية):

- تنقسم الأصوات في الكلمات على حسب الحروف المتحركة والساكنة داخل الكلمة مثل: **sock**
- تبدأ الكلمة بالصوت **s** ثم بعدها صوت حرف **o** المتحرك وحرفي **ck** معاً صوت واحد فتصبح الكلمة عبارة عن ثلاث أصوات.

ثلاثة أصوات **f - i - sh** ← كلمة **fish**

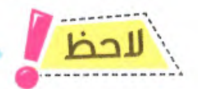
- الحروف المجمعة مع بعضها وتعطي صوتاً واحداً:

th	ذ / ث	this / tooth	sh	ش	fish
igh	long i	light	ch	تش	chair
ph	ف	photo	ck	ك	sock

- أي حرفان مضاعفان لنفس الحرف ينطقا صوت واحد.

صوت واحد **s** ← glass | صوت واحد **g** ← egg





لاحظ

كلمة **successful** هنا حرف **c** الأول ينطق مثل **k** لأنه جاء بعده حرف **c** والحرف **c** الثاني ينطق مثل حرف **s** لأن بعده حرف **e**.

نطق حرف **c** مثل حرف **s** إذا جاء بعده **y** **i** **e** وينطق **k** مع باقي الحروف.

إذا جاء حرف **e** في نهاية الكلمة وسبقه حرف ساكن لا ينطق مثل كلمة cone rose .

لا ينطق حرف **w** إذا جاء بعده حرف **r** مثل write .

لا ينطق حرف **k** إذا جاء بعده حرف **n** مثل know .

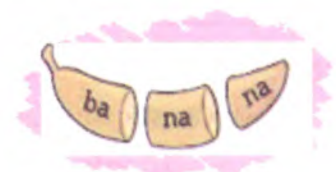
لا ينطق حرف **b** إذا جاء قبله حرف **m** مثل lamb .

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

➤ تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتى يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلى:

Count the syllables.





١ كلمة (chips) تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد حيث بها صوت short i.

٢ كلمة (chicken) تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين.



١ إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهى بذلك تعد مقطع صوتى واحد.

فمثلا كلمة meat بها حرفين متحركين (a / e) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.

٢ فى كلمة make تنتهى الكلمة بحرف e لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.

٣ إذا جاءت (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (L) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتى كما فى كلمة apple .

٤ لاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة city تحتوى على مقطعين صوتين .

◉ **لاحظ عدد الأصوات فى كلمة hat ثلاثة لكن عدد المقاطع الصوتية واحد.**

1 Circle the three sounds in the words. Then write the words:

ضع دائرة حول الثلاث اصوات فى الكلمات الآتية. ثم اكتب الكلمات:

1
d i ll
t o f
doll

2
f u ll
t i sh
....

3 *
f u r
k o ll
....

4
n i ck
t e f
....

* الصورة رقم (٣) لا تعبر عن لبن، الصورة تعنى ملئ.

2 Listen and check (✓) the words with long vowel sounds

استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الكلمات التى بها أصوات متحركة ممتدة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

استمع إلى النص:

1 cry ☐	2 swim ☐	3 bat ☐
4 so ☐	5 fuel ☐	6 make ☐
7 cone ☐	8 cube ☐	9 feet ☐

3 Listen and write the number of syllables next to the words. Then say the words

استمع واكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية بجوار الكلمة ثم قل الكلمة:

استمع إلى النص:

baby 2	delete ☐	robot ☐	window ☐	racket ☐
human ☐	spider ☐	tiger ☐	paper ☐	final ☐
hotel ☐	music ☐	Egypt ☐	pollute ☐	teacher ☐



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. .... is my favorite sport.
   a Football b Tennis c Squash d Handball
2. I can play it on the ....
   a court b pitch c racket d pool
3. We kick the ball with our ....
   a hands b feet c heads d arms
4. We always .... the match in my team.
   a win b lose c wear d keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In " .... " we do high kicks. مرسى مطروح - إدارة الحمام (2024)
   a tennis b football c kung fu d swimming
2. I use a .... when I play squash. البحر الاحمر - إدارة سفاجا (2024)
   a pitches b goggles c boots d rackets
3. I wear my swimming .... when I swim in the swimming pool. أسيوط - إدارة ديروط (2024)
   a goggles b rackets c boots d court
4. I wear a .... when I do karate.
   a boots b racket c suit d goggles
5. When I play football, I wear football ....
   a goggles b rackets c boots d hats
6. A football .... is the place where I play football.
   a shirt b house c pitch d pool

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

goggles - rackets - favorite - person - club

I love sport. My ❶ .... sport is swimming. I go to the ❷ .... every Sundays. I love swimming because I feel like a different ❸ .... I wear my swimming suit and ❹ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Ali, Aya and Marwa like sport. Ali likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. They play football on the pitch. His team always wins. Marwa likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. She wears goggles when she swims. Her friends like Marwa because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Aya is a good squash player. Her racket is red and white. They are good players. They advise all people to practice sports.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali and his friends play football on a ....

   a court   b pool   c pitch   d street

2. Aya's racket is ....

   a red   b white   c red and black   d red and white

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Which sport does Marwa like? ---------------------------
4. Why do Marwa's friends like her? ---------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. best - kicks - like - I - high. ---------------------------
2. like - person - I - a different - feel. ---------------------------
3. pitch - We - on - play - football - the. --------------- القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)
4. karate - for - My - white - suit - is. ---------------------------
5. is - an - awesome - This - sport. ---------------------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's your favorite sport ---------------------------
2. i practice football on Friday ---------------------------

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The swimming pool

Guiding phrases

wear goggles - on the weekend

Lessons 4&5 Writing - A Sports Biography
Project: (Water pollution)

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

champion	بطل	competitor	منافس - خصم
athlete	لاعب رياضي	the future	المستقبل
medal	ميدالية	water bodies	المسطحات المائية
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)	pollution	تلوث

Other words كلمات أخرى



Paralympic Games	الألعاب الاوليمبية (لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو
Olympic Games (Olympics)	الألعاب الاوليمبية	at the age of....	فى سن....
		practicing hard	يتدرب بجد
training	تدريب	flag	علم
prize	جائزة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	toilet	مرحاض (حمام)
bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	running water	المياه الجارية
special moment	لحظة خاصة	organisms	الكائنات الحية
sportsperson	شخص رياضي	wastewater	مياه الصرف
Moroccan	مغربى الجنسية	wildlife	الحياة البرية
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	garbage	قمامة

Adjectives صفات



amazing	مذهل	kind	عطوف
important	هام/ مهم	special	مميز/ خاص
harmful	ضار	successful	ناجح
interesting	شيق		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
compete	يتنافس	competed
carry	يحمل	carried
kill	يقتل	killed
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed
cause	يسبب	caused
avoid	يتجنب	avoided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
win	يفوز	won
become	يصبح	became
lose	يخسر	lost
throw	يرمى	threw

How to write a biography: كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية:

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياض (مثلاً) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياض:

1- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد.

2- He / She began ....بدأ.

3- He / She was the first .... كان أول شخص.

4- He / She is successful because .... يعتبر شخص ناجح لأنه.

5- He / She won .... فاز - فازت بـ.

6- He / She also / Moreover / as well as/ ....

هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك................. .

- وفيما يلى نموذج لسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضى (Mohamed Salah)

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his village.



Study the following

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player.

- هداية ملاك هى لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.

2. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag in the Olympic Games.

- هي واحدة من الاثنين اللذين حملا علم مصر في الألعاب الأوليمبية.

3. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven.

- بدأت ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو وهي في السابعة من عمرها.

4. She won the bronze medal.

- حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية.

5. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.

- ساعدت لاعبة مغربية من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة.

6. Water pollution can kill organisms.

- يمكن لتلوث المياه أن يقتل الكائنات الحية.

7. Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

- يمكن أن تجعل المياه الملوثة الأطفال وكبار السن مرضى.

8. Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.

- المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية فى الأنهار.

9. Save as much water as possible.

- حافظ على أكبر قدر ممكن من المياه.

10. Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

- لا تُلقى القمامة فى أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.



1 Read and check:

اقرأ وتأكد من إجابتك.



استمع إلى النص:



1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian **taekwondo**(1) player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the **Tokyo Olympic Games**(2) in 2021. This is **amazing**(3).
2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the **bronze medal**(4) at the **Rio Olympics**(5) in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.
3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped **a Moroccan athlete**(6) with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to **compete**(7) against, so Hedaya became her **competitor**(8) and lost. Raja could **therefore**(9) win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.
4. What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

Arabic Meaning

١- رياضة التايكوندو
٢- الألعاب الأوليمبية بطوكيو
٣- مذهل
٤- ميدالية برونزية
٥- الألعاب الأوليمبية بريو
٦- رياضية مغربية
٧- ينافس
٨- منافس
٩- بعد ذلك

2 Read again and answer the questions

اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة آخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. What is her sport? ....
2. Why is she important? ....
3. Who did she help in 2016? ....
4. What does she want for the future? ....

3 Read again, and match the paragraphs (1-4) to the headings (a-d)

اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة أخرى ثم صل الفقرات من (١-٤) بـ (a - d)

a. What Hedaya will do next [4]
b. Who the famous sportsperson is. [ ]
c. Something else she is famous for [ ]
d. Further information about her sport and her prizes [ ]

4 Write notes for a sports biography. Use phrases 1-6 to help you. Try to use the words in the box:

اكتب نبذة عن سيرة ذاتية لشخص رياضي.

athlete - compete - future - medals - sports - training

Mohamed Salah was born on June 15, 1992. ....
....
....

5 Work in groups. Discuss and research: اعمل فى مجموعات. ناقش وابحث:

How can we make our cities less polluted?

How can we make our air, water, and soil cleaner ?


استمع إلى النص:

Water pollution

When **harmful chemicals**[1] go into **water bodies**[2] like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill **organisms**[3] that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and **crabs**[4]. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can **cause**[5] animals to lose their homes and change their **habitats**[6].





Causes[7]	Effects[8]	Solutions[9]
• Wastewater from **sinks**[10], **toilets**[11], and showers • Wastewater and chemicals from factories • Wastewater from **agricultural land** [12] and cities into rivers 	• Dirty water can make children and old people ill.  • Polluted water **destroys**[13] wildlife[14] in rivers.	• Save as much water as possible. • Take shorter showers. • **Avoid**[15] **running water**[16]. • Never throw garbage[17] in or near a lake or beach.

Arabic Meaning

١- مواد كيميائية ضارة
٢- مسطحات مائية
٣- كائنات حية
٤- كابوريا
٥- يسبب
٦- بيئات
٧- الأسباب
٨- التأثيرات
٩- الحلول
١٠- احواض
١١- مراحيض
١٢- أراض زراعية
١٣- يدمر
١٤- الحياة البرية
١٥- يتجنب
١٦- المياه الجارية
١٧- القمامة



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Rania Elwani is a famous Egyptian ....
   a taekwondo player b tennis player c swimmer d handball player
2. Rania Elwani was born on .... 14, 1977.
   a March b July c October d August
3. She practiced swimming at the age of ....
   a seven b eight c six d nine
4. She won many gold and .... medals.
   a metal b bronze c silver d special

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. She is good at sports. She's a famous .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024))
   a athlete b doctor c teacher d vet
2. Water pollution is very .... (المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم (2024))
   a useful b good c harmful d helpful
3. She won many prizes .... the age of 14.
   a at b on c of d in
4. I didn't win the race, but I won the bronze ....
   a metal b medal c racket d ticket
5. I play squash with Amr, Amr is my ....
   a competitor b training c medal d prize
6. Hedaya Malak is a / an .... Egyptian taekwondo player.
   a toxic b famous c angry d unhealthy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

taekwondo - prizes - born - medal - won

Hedya Malak is a famous Egyptian athlete. She was (1) .... on April 21, 1993. She started practicing (2) .... at the age of seven. She won many (3) .... at the age of 14. She also won the bronze (4) .... in 2016.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Water pollution is when harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. Water pollution can kill fish, birds and crabs that live in the water. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We can stop water pollutions. We can save as much water as possible, take shorter shower, avoid running water and never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Water pollution is ....

   a dangerous b beautiful c interesting d helpful

2. .... can make children and old people ill.

   a Salty b Fresh c Clean d Dirty

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is water pollution? ....
4. How can we stop water pollution? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. practicing - She - hard - is. ....
2. is - kind - Hedaya - a very - person. ....
3. does - What - want - she - the future - for? ....
4. helped - a Moroccan - She - with - athlete - special needs. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hedaya malak is a famous player. ....
2. what does Hedaya do now ....

7 Write a biography of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب سيرة ذاتية من (٣٠) كلمة:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your favorite player Hedaya Malak

Guiding questions

1- What's her sport?
2- What does she want for the future?

....
....
....

Review

Sports


squash
الاسكواش


tennis
التنس


football
كرة القدم

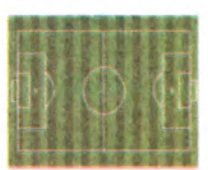

karate
الكاراتيه

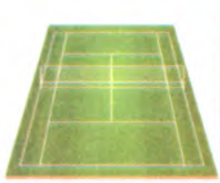

kung fu
الكونج فو

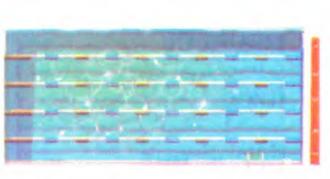

swimming
السباحة


sailing
الابحار


handball
كرة اليد


football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم


tennis court
ملعب التنس


swimming pool
حمام السباحة


karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


squash rackets
مضارب الاسكواش


swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة


tennis ball
كرة التنس

Different activities


cook
يطهو / يطبخ


draw
يرسم


climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار


jump
يقفز


do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة


walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء

Help your child revise Unit 2.

ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Other words كلمات أخرى



emissions	انبعاثات	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
champion	بطل	nightmare	كابوس
awesome	رائع / مذهل	competitor	منافس - خصم
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)	athlete	لاعب رياضي
shade	ظل	pollution	التلوث

Adjectives صفات



worse at	أسوأ في	awful	فظيع
toxic	سام	clean	نظيف
dangerous	خطير	dirty	قذر - متسخ
horrible	مفزع	harmful	ضار
asleep	نائم	successful	ناجح
famous	مشهور	great	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
agree	يوافق	agreed
try	يجرب	tried
compete	يتنافس	competed
kill	يقتل	killed
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed
cause	يسبب	caused
avoid	يتجنب	avoided
practice	يمارس	practiced
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

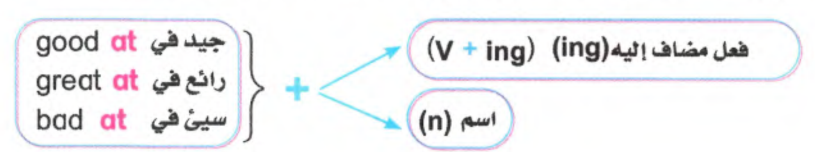
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
win	يفوز	won
do	يفعل / يدرس / يحل	did
draw	يرسم	drew
make	يُعد (طعام)	made
sing	يغني	sang
become	يصبح	became
lose	يخسر	lost
throw	يرمي	threw
speak	يتحدث	spoke
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Grammar قواعد لغوية



good at / great at / bad at

◉ نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله :



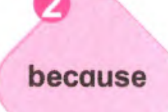
- I'm **good at playing** football. / I'm good **at football**.

◉ يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is **great at writing** poems.
- They are **bad at tennis**.

---

because



◉ نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- **Why** are you good at table tennis?

وللاجابة نستخدم :



- I'm good at table tennis **because** I can move fast.

---

but & and

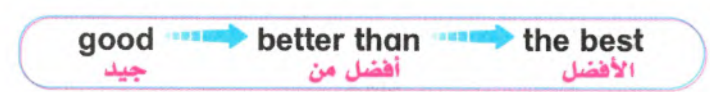
◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي أنها تضيف للمعنى :

- I play tennis **and** basketball.
- I like fruit **and** vegetables.

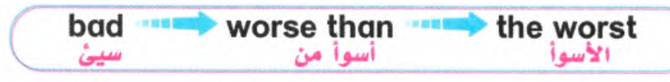
◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, **but** it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, **but** I like fruit.

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة :



- I'm better at tennis than I'm at football.
- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.



- I think kung fu is worse than karate.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

Your favorite sport

1 I like sports. My favorite sport is karate. I do karate in the club. I wear a karate suit. I practice it with my friends. I go to the club with my father on Friday. I'm great at doing karate.

Lesson 2

The things you are good or bad at

2 I'm good at helping my mom in the kitchen. I'm good at cooking. I cook delicious meals. But I'm bad at cleaning the house or drawing pictures.

Lesson 3

The swimming pool

3 I like swimming. I swim in the swimming pool. I wear goggles to protect my eyes. I like sports. I swim on the weekend. I want to be a good swimmer in the future. My friends like swimming, too.

Lessons 4&5

My favorite player Hedaya Malak

4 My favorite Egyptian taekwondo player is Hedaya Malak. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She won many important prizes.

Activity - Unit 2

A sportsperson

5 My friend is a sportsperson. He loves sports very much. He practices sports in the club. He won many prizes. He won the bronze and gold medals. He trains hard to win a lot of prizes in the future.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I go to the tennis court in the .... (park - club - school)
2. The club is .... my house. (near - next - behind)
3. I take a .... to play tennis. (suit - racket - bike)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

squash - match - watching - sport

A : What are you ....?

B : An old ....

A : What .... are you good at?

B : I'm good at playing ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Osama. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I play football with my friends at the club. I go to the club every morning. I'm bad at playing handball.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What is Osama good at? ....
2. When does Osama go to the club? ....

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Osama likes making .... (cakes - salad - cheese)
4. Osama is bad at playing .... (football - handball - tennis)

5. Osama plays football with his .... (brothers - cousins - friends)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good .... playing football.

a at   b for   c in

2. Hedaya Malak .... born on April 21, 1993.

a was   b is   c were

3. I'm good at handball, ... I am bad at tennis.

a and   b but   c because

4. I like sitting in the .... of trees on hot days.

a chair   b shade   c ship

5. Soha is bad at .... kung fu.

a play   b playing   c plays

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. play - Where - tennis - you - do?

....

2. you - later - the club - See - in.

....

3. are - jumping - Cats - at - good.

....

4. she - Why - is - important?

....

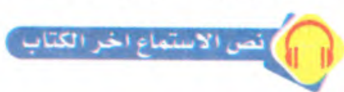
5. water - make - ill - Dirty - children - can.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Pollution is a dangerous problem in our ....
   a city b world c village d country
2. People .... garbage in lakes, rivers and seas.
   a buy b kill c throw d get
3. The .... water kills organisms that live in water.
   a fresh b polluted c cold d hot
4. We should find solutions to the problem and .... water.
   a save b destroy c lose d carry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Football is my favorite ....
   a color b time c sport d food
2. I can do high kicks in ....
   a handball b kung fu c tennis d sailing
3. We should .... clean air.
   a pollute b breathe c stop d lose
4. I play tennis with balls and tennis ....
   a goggles b rackets c pitches d boots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

practicing - born - athlete - bronze - won

Hedaya Malak is my favorite player. She's a famous Egyptian ❶ .... She started ❷ .... taekwondo at the age of seven. She ❸ .... prizes at the age of 14. She also won the ❹ .... medal in 2016.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active. All the teachers like her and she won many prizes in the school team.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. Sara plays squash at the ....
   a park b club c zoo d garden
2. She wants to be a famous ....
   a doctor b teacher c engineer d player

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Sara? ....
4. What is Sara's favorite sport? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. great - Mazin - is - doing - at - jigsaws. ....
2. won - important - Hedaya - medals - many. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

أقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She's good at .... (swim) .
2. I go to the club to .... (playing) tennis.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he is a famous egyptian player ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A sportsperson

Guiding phrases

practice sports - won many prizes

....

....

....



I discover myself

How do I look?

كيف يبدو مظهرى؟



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الملابس المختلفة.

2. Listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.

- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن الأمتعة المستخدمة للسفر فى إجازة .

3. Practice using the infinitive of purpose.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شئ.

4. Read a traditional folktale.

- يقرأ الطالب حكاية شعبية قديمة .

5. Learn how to say past simple endings /d/ , /t/ and / Id /.

- يتعلم الطالب نطق الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ed) فى الماضى البسيط .

6. Multiply multi-digit numbers.

- يقوم الطالب بعملية ضرب للأرقام الكبيرة .

7. Write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.

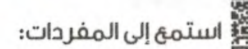
- يكتب الطالب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة باستخدام الصفات .

8. Research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبعمل منشور عن الملابس التقليدية حول العالم .

Lesson 1 Our trip to Al Fayoum

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


T-shirt
تى شيرت


sunglasses
نظارة شمس


swimming shorts
شورت سباحة (مايوه)


scarf
كوفية (شال)


sweater بلوفر




sneakers حذاء رياضى


galabeya جلابية


necklace عُقد


pajamas بيجامة


coat بالطو


spotted
منقط


striped (مقلم) مخطط
stripes (تقليم) خطوط


pack
يعبئ (حقيبة السفر)


suitcase
شنطة سفر



Adjectives صفات

exciting	شيق / مثير
excited	متشوق / متحمس
lovely	محبوب
cool	رائع / بارد
comfortable	مريح
natural	طبيعى
man-made	من صنع الانسان

Other words كلمات أخرى

trip	رحلة قصيرة
ages	فترة طويلة
pool	حمام سباحة
gold	ذهب / ذهبى
come on	هيا
shopping mall	مركز تسوق (مول)
walk around	يتجول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
remember	يتذكر	remembered
pack	يُعبئ (شنط سفر)	packed
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدى	wore
give	يعطى	gave

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Suggestion الإقتراح

للتعبير عن الاقتراح نستخدم:

What about + noun اسم ? ماذا عن / ما رأيك في ....؟

- What about my best galabeya?

2 Giving advice التعبير عن النصيحة

فاعل + should ينبغي أن + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You should pack a sweater.

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

1 Future simple tense المستقبل البسيط

مصدر الفعل .inf + will ('ll) + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء سوف يحدث فى المستقبل.

- I will take my gold necklace.
- She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

وفى النفى نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل .inf + will not (= won't) + فاعل

- You won't need your coat.

وفى السؤال بـ (هل....؟) نستخدم:

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- Will I need my scarf?
- Yes, you will. إجابة مختصرة مثبتة: No, you won't. إجابة مختصرة منفية:

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

tomorrow غدا - next القادم (week - year - month) - in the future فى المستقبل

2 the one / the ones

نستخدم the one لعدم تكرار الاسم المفرد:

- I'll need my T-shirt. I'll take the one that my grandma gave me.

ونستخدم the ones لعدم تكرار الاسم الجمع:

- He'll need these pajamas. He'll buy the ones with the stripes.

Study the following

1. We need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.
   - نحتاج أن نعبئ شنط السفر للاجازة غداً.
2. We haven't seen them for ages.
   - لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة.
3. You need to wear something comfortable on your feet.
   - تحتاج أن ترتدى شىء مريح فى قدميك.
4. What else do I need?
   - ماذا أحتاج أيضا؟
5. It will be very sunny.
   - سيكون الطقس مشمس جدًا.
6. It can be cool in the evenings.
   - يمكن أن يكون الطقس بارد فى الامسيات.
7. I'll take the ones with the stripes.
   - سوف آخذ البيجامة التى بها خطوط (مقلمة).
8. They're really cool!
   - إنها رائعة حقًا.
9. Cotton grows in the Nile Delta.
   - ينمو القطن فى دلتا النيل.



1 Listen and read. What are Mom and Aser doing? استمع واقرأ. ماذا تفعل الأم وآسر؟

Mom: Aser, we need to **pack** our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.


استمع إلى النص:

Aser: It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

Mom: I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

Aser: OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

Mom: Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

Aser: Will I need a coat and a scarf?

Mom: No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

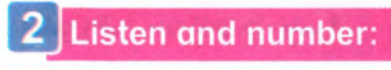
Aser: OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

Mom: You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

Aser: What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

Mom: No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

Aser: Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the **stripes**. They're really cool!



2 Listen and number:

استمع ورقم كما بالمثال:

 spotted منقط

 striped مخطط (مقلم)





استمع إلى النص:

1- Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought striped pajamas.

2- Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.

3- Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

4- Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

a  [ ]

b  [ ]

c  [ ]

d  [1]

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

- Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.

- ينمو القطن فى دلتا النيل. يعتقد كثير من الناس أن القطن المصرى هو افضل قطن فى العالم.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I went to Alexandria last __________ .

a winter b summer c spring d fall

2. I went to Alexandria with my __________ .

a friends b family c brothers d cousins

3. I took my sunglasses because it's __________ .

a windy b raining c sunny d cloudy

4. I took my three blue __________ .

a T-shirts b shorts c dresses d sweaters

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

back - pack - excited - shorts - sunglasses

I am Sarah. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family tomorrow. We are very ❶ .... We need to ❷ .... our suitcase. My brother Hema needs to pack his swimming ❸ .... to swim in the sea. I will take my ❹ .... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wear my __________ to protect my eyes from the sun. أسيوط - إدارة ساحل سليم (2024)

a scarf b galabeya c sunglasses d shorts

2. Mona is in her __________ . She is going to sleep. أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط (2024)

a sneakers b sunglasses c scarf d pajamas

3. I wear my __________ when I go swimming. الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة (2024)

a galabeya b sweater c swimming shorts d sneakers

4. A __________ has long white sleeves. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب (2024)

a T-shirt b skirt c galabeya d hat

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5. I need to pack my clothes in the .... to travel. قنا - إدارة نجع حمادي (2024)

a glasses b sneakers c pocket d suitcase

6. I'll take my ...., we'll be walking around a lot on our feet.

a sneakers b sunglasses c pajamas d necklace

7. Women wear .... around their necks.

a coats b sweaters c necklaces d sunglasses

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. made - My shirt - of - is - cotton. أسيوط - إدارة ديروط (2024)

....

2. pack - my - I'll - T-shirt - favorite.

....

3. a - took - She - umbrella - spotted.

....

4. grows - Delta - Cotton - Nile - in the.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She .... (is) pack her scarf tomorrow. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين (2024)
2. We won't .... (needed) our coats.
3. She'll .... (packing) her suitcase.
4. You should .... (took) your sweater.
5. It will .... (being) sunny tomorrow.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why do you need your necklace

....

2. hoda went to the shopping mall yesterday

....

Lesson 2 ★ My favorite clothes
Part 1

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


galabeya
جلابية


sleeves
أكمام


pockets
جيوب


suit
بدلة


a striped dress
فستان مخطط (مقلم)


a spotted dress
فستان منقط


sweater
بلوفر


belt
حزام


costume
زي خاص


crown
تاج


gloves
قفازات (جوانتي)


robe
رداء/ثوب (روب)

ADJECTIVES صفات



traditional	تقليدي / قديم
hidden	خفى / غير ظاهر
colorful	كثير الألوان / زاهى الألوان
useful	مفيد
popular	شعبى / شائع / محبوب
sunburned	مصاب بحروق الشمس
special	مميز / خاص

Other words كلمات أخرى



social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
information	معلومات
for example	على سبيل المثال/ مثلًا
princess	أميرة
study hard	يذاكر بجد
Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية
festival	مهرجان / احتفال
pattern	شكل / نمط
cardboard paper	ورق مقوى
cotton	قطن
wedding	زفاف
essay	مقال
grades	درجات فى الامتحان
library	مكتبة لقراءة واستعارة الكتب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
borrow	يستعير / يستلف	borrowed
protect	يحمي	protected
travel	يسافر	traveled
call	يتصل / ينادي	called
study	يذاكر / يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
get	يحصل علي / يصاب بـ	got
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
buy	يشتري	bought
sleep	ينام	slept



Study the following

1. **I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing.**
   - أعمل مشروع مدرسي عن الملبس المصري.
2. **What do you want to know?**
   - ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟
3. **Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?**
   - هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟
4. **This is the long robe that is very popular.**
   - هذا الرداء الطويل شائع جدًا.
5. **The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned.**
   - الأكمام طويلة ولذلك لن نصاب بحروق شمس.
6. **But they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside.**
   - لكنهم غير ظاهرين، لا تستطيع أن تراهم من الخارج.

1 Listen and read. Fares is talking to his friend Tomas on social media. What does Tomas want to know about?

استمع واقرأ. فارس يتكلم مع صديقه توماس عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. ماذا يريد توماس أن يعرف؟



استمع إلى النص:

Tomas : Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school **project**(1) about **Egyptian clothing**(2). Can you give me some information?

Fares : Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

Tomas : Well, what do you **usually**(3) wear?

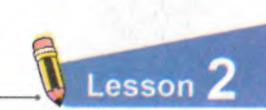
Fares : I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

Tomas : Cool! Can you tell me about some **traditional**(4) Egyptian clothes?

Fares : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white **robe**(5) that is very **popular**(6).

Arabic Meaning

1- مشروع
2- ملابس مصرية
3- عادة
4- تقليدي
5- رداء
6- شائع / محبوب



Tomas : Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

Fares : Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The **sleeves**(7) are long so we don't get sunburned!

Tomas : Are there **pockets**(8)?

Fares : Yes! But they're **hidden**(9) – you can't see them from the **outside**(10).

Tomas : Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special **festival**(11)?

Fares : We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful **patterns**(12) on them.

Tomas : Thanks, Fares. That's really **useful**(13)!

Arabic Meaning

٧- الاكمام
٨- جيوب
٩- خفى
١٠- الخارج
١١- إحتفال
١٢- أشكال
١٣- مفيد

2 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل:

انظر إلى الصورة وأكمل بالكلمات فى القائمة:

belt - costume - crown - gloves - pockets - spotted

1. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two ....
2. Reem is wearing a .... She looks like a princess! She has a .... on her head. She has white .... on her hands.



Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ My favorite clothes

Grammar

قواعد لغوية


To + inf.
(مصدر الفعل) للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ نستخدم (to + inf.) للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء ما.

- I need a pen to write my homework.

◉ وفي حالة السؤال عن الغرض نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (لماذا...؟ ?...Why):

- Why did Samy go to town?

  Samy went to town to buy new sneakers.

- Why did Tarek make a suit?

  Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

◉ لاحظ للاجابة عن السؤال بـ(?...Why) نستخدم (because or to)، لكن يأتي بعد (because) جملة:

- He went to town because he wanted to buy a T-shirt.

---

2 Past simple tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

١- يعبر عن شئ حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

٢- يتكون من: أفعال منتظمة.

1 Regular verbs

◉ يضاف للفعل (d) أو (ed) أو (ied):

◉ يضاف للفعل (d) إذا انتهى بحرف (e):

move ⟶ moved	**celebrate ⟶ celebrated**

◉ يضاف للفعل (ed) إذا لم ينتهي بحرف (e):

borrow ⟶ borrowed	**travel ⟶ traveled**

◉ يضاف للفعل (ied) إذا كان آخره حرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن:

study ⟶ studied	**cry ⟶ cried**

٣- وهناك أفعال شاذة تحفظ تصريفاتها:

2 Irregular verbs

leave ⟶ left	**buy ⟶ bought**

- I bought some glasses yesterday.
- My teacher used a red pen.

Negative في النفي

فاعل + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- I didn't buy glasses yesterday.

Question في السؤال

كلمة استفهام + (Did) + فاعل + inf. ?

- What did the teacher use?
  He used a pen.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday بالأمس - last الماضي (week - month - year) / in + عام ماض

1 Work with a partner. Read and answer: اشترك مع زميلك واقرأ وأجب:

اقرأ الإجابات والأسئلة الآتية حول استخدام **to + inf.** للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء.

1. Why did Sameh go to town?
   - Sameh went to town to buy new sneakers.
2. Why did Nessma go to the kitchen?
   - Nessma went to the kitchen to make a cake.
3. Why did Tarek make a suit?
   - Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

2 Circle the correct words: ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

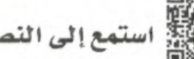
1. I went to the library borrow / to borrow a book.
2. Injy used a pen to write / write her essay.
3. Sherif bought a new suitcase take / to take on holiday.
4. Malak wears her sunglasses to protect / protect her eyes.

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I bought some sunglasses	a. to play with our friends.
2 We went to the park	b. to buy some bread.
3 Hazem studied hard	c. to finish their homework.
4 Basma went to the shop	d. to wear on holiday.
5 They went to the library	e. to get good grades.

4 Listen and number: استمع ورقم:



Tapescript نص الاستماع 



Girl 1 : I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

Boy 1 : I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.

Boy 2 : I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework.

Girl 2 : I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

a  ☐

b  1

c  ☐

d  ☐

5 Look and make sentences in the past simple to express purpose:

انظر واكتب جمل فى زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الغرض:

1. I / go / to my bedroom / sleep

   I went to my bedroom to sleep.

2. Nayera / leave / the party / catch her train

   ---

3. Adam / call / Younis / ask for help with his project

   ---

4. Tarek / buy / a racket / play tennis

   ---

5. My teacher / use / a red pen / correct homework



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Many people wear .... Egyptian clothes.
   a traditional b old c new d long
2. People wear .... when they're celebrating special festivals.
   a shorts b galabeyas c sweaters d sneakers
3. The galabeyas have long ....
   a necklaces b belts c gloves d sleeves
4. Some people wear galabeyas with .... colors.
   a easy b different c some d big

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nour is wearing .... on her hands. (بني سويف - إدارة سمسطا (2024))
   a glasses b belts c gloves d shorts
2. Marwa went to the .... to borrow books. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه (2024))
   a wedding b market c shop d library
3. Hala went to the kitchen to .... a cake. (الدقهلية - إدارة جمصة (2024))
   a buy b make c do d write
4. The .... is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.
   a pocket b crown c galabeya d belt
5. I wore .... to keep me warm in winter.
   a shorts b gloves c T-shirts d belts
6. Nabil has a small ...., so he can't put his money in it.
   a pocket b belt c crown d scarf
7. The galabeya is a long white ....
   a robe b belt c skirt d scarf

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pen - crown - gloves - spotted - princess

Samar and Aya are in a party. Samar is wearing a (1) .... dress with two pockets. Aya is wearing a costume. She is wearing a (2) .... on her head. She looks like a (3) .... ! She is wearing white (4) .... on her hands. (قنا - إدارة قنا (2024))

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Omar. I live in Aswan, Egypt. It's usually very hot here. I wear T-shirts and shorts. My favorite thing to wear is the galabeya. Galabeyas are traditional Egyptian clothes. They are very popular. They are long, white robes. They are made from cotton. The sleeves of the galabeyas are usually long, so people don't get sunburned. They have pockets, too. You can't see them from the outside because they are hidden. I like to wear the galabeya for Eid.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. Aswan is usually very ---------- .
   a cold b snowy c hot d rainy
2. Omar's favorite thing to wear is the ---------- .
   a galabeya b shirt c jacket d sweater

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What are the galabeyas made from? ------------------------------
4. Do galabeyas have pockets? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. like - Reem - princess - looks - a. ------------------------------
2. my - My - thing - sweater - favorite - is. ------------------------------
3. pockets - in - Are - your - there - dress? ------------------------------
4. galabeyas - wear - People - special - in - festivals. (القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024))
----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They ---------- (clean) the room yesterday. (بني سويف - إدارة ناصر (2024))
2. Mom ---------- (cook) molokhia last Friday. (الفيوم - إدارة إطسا (2024))
3. We didn't ---------- (watched) the match yesterday. (البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود (2024))
4. I ---------- (visit) my grandfather yesterday. (الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024))
5. Nabil went to his bedroom to ---------- (slept) . (القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة (2024))
6. I ---------- (don't) see my friend yesterday. (البحيرة - إدارة إدكو (2024))
7. My brother bought a suit to ---------- (wore) in the party.
8. Hoda went to the market ---------- (for) buy food.
9. **A:** ---------- (How) did Omar go to the library? **B:** To read books.

Lesson 3 The Elves and the Shoemaker




Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

shoemaker	صانع أحذية	enough	كافٍ
elf (elves)	جنى صغير (جن)		

Adjectives صفات

kind	طيب	beautiful	جميل
honest	أمين	delicious	لذيذ
poor	فقير	surprised	مندهش
tired	مُتعب	new	جديد
perfect	رائع	interesting	شيق
amazing	مدهش / رائع	happy	سعيد
amazed	مندهش	little	قليل / صغير

Other words كلمات أخرى

money	نقود	quickly	بسرعة
tonight	هذا المساء (الليلة)	happily	بسعادة
sports day	يوم رياضي	meal	وجبة
Oh dear.	وا أسفاه.	details	تفاصيل
wife	زوجة	kindness	عطف
workshop	ورشة	pair	زوج من (أحذية مثلا)
leather	جلد مدبوغ	once upon a time	يحكى أن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
believe	يؤمن / يعتقد	believed
dance	يرقص	danced
thank	يشكر	thanked
describe	يصف	described
try	يجرب / يقيس	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cut out	يقص	cut out
pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
say	يقول	said
find out	يكتشف	found out
leave	يترك / يغادر	left
hide	يختبئ	hid



Study the following

1. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.
   - عمل صانع الأحذية بجد ولكن لم يكن معه نقود.
2. The shoemaker was kind and honest.
   - كان بائع الأحذية طيب وأمين.
3. The shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes.
   - لم يصدق صانع الأحذية عينيه.
4. The shoemaker's wife made him a delicious meal.
   - اعدت زوجة صانع الأحذية له وجبة لذيذة.
5. The shoemaker and his wife were amazed.
   - صانع الأحذية و زوجته كانوا مندهشين.
6. They were surprised to see two little elves.
   - كانوا مندهشين لرؤية اثنان من الجن الصغير.
7. She walked in the park yesterday.
   - قامت بالتمشية فى الحديقة أمس.
8. They're perfect.
   - إنهم رائعين.
9. The wife looked surprised.
   - بدت الدهشة على الزوجة.
10. I have never seen such amazing shoes.
    - لم أرى أبداً مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش.
11. Can I try them?
    - هل يمكن أن أقيسهم؟
12. The shoemaker and his wife lived happily.
    - عاش صانع الأحذية وزوجته بسعادة.
13. Who made the shoes every night?
    - من صنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

1 Look at the words in bold in the text. What sort of words are they?

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة فى النص. مانوع هذه الكلمات؟

2 Listen and read. Who made the shoes every night?

استمع واقرأ. من كان يصنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:





Once upon a time, a **kind** and **honest** shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very **poor**, but they were **happy**. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too **tired** to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are **beautiful**. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such **amazing** shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a **delicious** meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us." That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their **new** clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

3 Read again. Look at the words in bold in the text. Find:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة فى النص واوجد:

1. a word that describes the shoemaker: honest __________ كلمة تصف صانع الأحذية.
2. a word that describes the shoes: __________
3. a word that describes the shoemaker's meal: __________

Pronunciation

How to pronounce final /ed/ sounds in verbs
كيفية نطق /ed/ فى نهاية الأفعال المنتظمة

◉ نطق /ed/ آخر الأفعال المنتظمة له ثلاث طرق كما يلى:

١ - تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /Id/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالاصوات /t/ , /d/

want	→	wanted	/Id/	need	→	needed	/Id/
visit	→	visited	/Id/	add	→	added	/Id/

٢- تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /d/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالأصوات التي تهتز بها الأحبال الصوتية وهي: (n - m - b - l - r - th (ذ) z - g - j - v - y - w)

play	→	played	/d/	clean	→	cleaned	/d/
slow	→	slowed	/d/	grab	→	grabbed	/d/
breathe	→	breathed	/d/				

٣- تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /t/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالأصوات التي لا تهتز بها الأحبال الصوتية وهي: (k - s - x - sh - ch - th (ث) - p - gh)

wash	→	washed	/t/	ask	→	asked	/t/
fix	→	fixed	/t/	dress	→	dressed	/t/
laugh	→	laughed	/t/	watch	→	watched	/t/
type	→	typed	/t/				

1 Look, say, and match: انظر وقل وصل:

a

☐

b

☐

c

1

1. Yesterday, I played football.
2. Yesterday, I walked in the park.
3. Yesterday, I tidied my room.



2 Listen:

استمع:





استمع إلى النص:

1. Played. Played. I played football.
2. Walked. Walked. I walked in the park.
3. Tidied. Tidied. I tidied my room.

1- /d/ played **2- /t/ walked** **3- /Id/ tidied**

3 Listen and write the verbs in the correct group:

استمع واكتب الأفعال فى المجموعة الصحيحة:





استمع إلى النص:

1. Ramy cleaned the windows. /d/
2. I lived in Cairo. /d/
3. We needed to leave. /Id/
4. I studied English. /Id/
5. I washed the car. /t/
6. I worked in Alexandria. /t/

cleaned - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/	/t/	/Id/
played	walked	tidied
cleaned		
--------	--------	--------

4 Say. Then listen and check:

قل. ثم استمع وتأكد:

1- asked /t/	2- counted /Id/	3- delivered /d/
4- dressed	5- enjoyed	6- fixed
7- promised	8- slowed	9- tasted
10- waited	11- carried	12- wanted



Multiply multi-digit numbers
ضرب الأعداد الكبيرة

1 Think and write the numbers. Listen and check:

فكر واكتب الأرقام. استمع وتأكد:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1. Ten times ten equals a hundred.
2. Thirty times twenty equals six hundred.
3. Fifty times fifty equals two thousand, five hundred.
4. Thirty-eight times twenty-four equals nine hundred and twelve.

1 $10 \times 10 = 100$
2 $30 \times 20 = 600$
3 $50 \times 50 =$ ....
4 $38 \times 24 =$ ....

2 Look, think, and write:

انظر وفكر واكتب:



1. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order? ....

فى اليوم الرياضى طلبت السيدة آمال ١٢ صندوق من التى شيرت للطلاب. كل صندوق يحتوى على ١٨ تى شيرت. - كم عدد التى شيرت التى طلبتها آمال؟

Answer

$12 \times 18 = 216$



2. Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks? ....

تصنع نورا القبعات. هى جيدة جدًا فى صنعتها. تستطيع أن تصنع ٢٥ قبعة كل أسبوع. كم عدد القبعات التى تستطيع صنعها فى ٤٨ أسبوع؟

Answer

$25 \times 48 =$ ....

Did you know?
If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!
هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بضرب أى رقم فى الصفر فالإجابة تكون صفر.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed's mother is good at making ....
   - a dresses and skirts
   - b hats and T-shirts
   - c galabeyas and scarfs
   - d shorts and shoes
2. Yesterday was a sports ....
   - a month
   - b day
   - c year
   - d festival
3. Ahmed's mother made ten .... of T-shirts.
   - a bags
   - b books
   - c boxes
   - d suitcases
4. Ahmed's mother gets a lot of ....
   - a money
   - b clothes
   - c sports
   - d food

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... makes shoes from leather.
   - a shoemaker
   - b vet
   - c farmer
   - d fisherman
2. The shoemaker's wife made a .... meal.
   - a delicious
   - b amazed
   - c tired
   - d honest
3. The shoemaker .... surprised.
   - a left
   - b looked
   - c found
   - d tried
4. I went to the shop and .... on a new dress.
   - a tried
   - b lived
   - c thanked
   - d danced
5. The shoemaker cut .... the leather to make new shoes.
   - a off
   - b out
   - c in
   - d to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

leather - workshop - elves - buy - shoes

القليوبية - إدارة طوخ (2024)

My grandfather was a shoemaker. He had a ❶ .... in the city. He made beautiful ❷ .... A lot of people went to ❸ .... their shoes from him. He was honest and made shoes from the best ❹ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a delicious - His - made - meal - wife.

----

2. tidied - I - yesterday - room - my.

----

3. and - The shoemaker - his - lived - happily - wife.

----

4. amazed - and - wife - The shoemaker - his - were.

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Can I .... (trying) these shoes?
2. She couldn't .... (believed) her eyes.
3. He worked hard .... (and) he had no money.
4. The shoemaker made .... (leather , small) shoes. الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس (2024)
5. The shoemaker and his wife .... (was) amazed.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. they weren t poor again. ---
2. Did the shoemaker s wife make a delicious meal ---

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

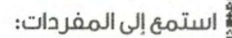
The shoemaker and the elves

Guiding phrases

- kind and honest - new shoes

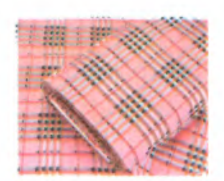
Lessons 4 & 5 ★ Writing ★ Project

Key vocabulary


school uniform
زى مدرسى


short-sleeved shirt
قميص ذو أكمام قصيرة


checked
ذو مربعات (كاروهات)


tie
رابطة عنق (كرافتة)


trousers
بنطلون


skirt
جيبة


socks
جورب (شراب)


leather shoes
حذاء جلد


vest
صديرى


jacket
چاكيت

sombrero
قبعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)



India	الهند	Japan	اليابان
Mexico	المكسيك	Finland	فنلندا

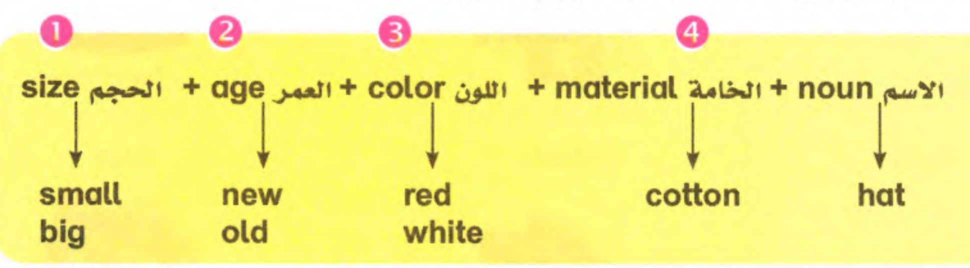
Other words كلمات أخرى

light	فاتح	material	الخامة/ القماش
pale	باهت / فاتح	size	الحجم / المقاس
dark	غامق	age	العمر
Mexican	مكسيكى	styles	أساليب/ أشكال
during	أثناء	gold	ذهب
feasts	أعياد	silver	فضة
celebrations	احتفالات	bright colors	ألوان زاهية
smart	أنيق	linen	كتان

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Adjectives الصفات

- تستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء.
- تأتى الصفات قبل الاسم التى تصفه أو بعد verb to be.
- عندما نستخدم أكثر من صفة نضعها فى الترتيب الآتى:



- Dad bought me a small new white galabeya.
- He had to wear an old orange hat.
- The shoemaker made small leather shoes.

Study the following

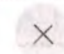
1. Our school uniform is really smart. – زينا المدرسي أنيق جدًا.
2. It doesn't get very cold here. – الطقس لا يصل للبرودة الشديدة هنا.
3. We have to wear a tie every day. – لابد أن نرتدى رابطة عنق (كرافتة) كل يوم.
4. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. – عندما يكون الطقس بارد، نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت.
5. Mexican girls love bright colors. – تحب البنات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية.
6. A sombrero is a traditional Mexican hat. – السمبريرو هى قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.
7. There are lots of different styles of sombrero. – هناك الكثير من الأشكال المختلفة للقبعات المكسيكية.
8. My mother bought me a red cotton dress. – اشترت لى والدتى فستان قطن أحمر.



1 Look and read. Whose school uniform is shown in the picture?

انظر واقرا. أى زى مدرسى موضح فى صورة الطلاب؛





Student A:

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short - sleeved[1] white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

Arabic Meaning

١- قميص ذو أكمام
٢- كرافتة
٣- خطوط (تقليم)
٤- فاتح/باهت
٥- كاروهات
٦- أنيق
٧- صديرى

Student B:

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie[2] every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes[3] on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale[4] blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked[5] skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

Student C:

Our school uniform is really **smart**[6]. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

Student D:

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

Student E:

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests[7] or jackets. I like my uniform!

2 Read the blog again and complete the sentences:

اقرأ المدونة السابقة مرة اخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. At Student A's school, students wear black leather shoes.
2. At Student B's school, the girls wear a blue and white checked skirts.
3. Students at Student C's school can wear .... gray skirts.
4. The boys at Student D's school wear .... green socks.
5. The girls and boys at Student E's school all wear dark .... jackets.

3 Read and add one more adjective to each row:

اقرأ واضف أكثر من صفة فى كل صف:

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way: عندما نستخدم الصفات نضعهم فى الترتيب الصحيح		
1	size	big, small, ...
2	age	old, new, ...
3	color	black, white, ...
4	material	cotton, linen, ...

4 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

ضع الصفات التى بين الاقواس فى الترتيب الصحيح:

1. She wore a green cotton dress. (cotton, green)
2. He had to wear an old orange hat. (old, orange)
3. Dad bought me a .... galabeya. (new, white)
4. The shoemaker made .... shoes. (small, leather)
5. I bought a .... jacket for the party. (new, green)

5 Which countries are these clothes from? Look and match:

من أي البلاد هذه الملابس؟ أنظر وصل:

Finland - India - Japan

1 

2 

3 

....

6 Look and read. What is the Mexican hat called?

انظر وأقرا. ماذا تسمي القبعة المكسيكية؟

CLOTHES IN MEXICO[1]

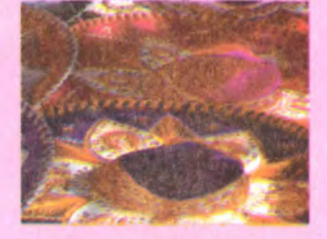


These girls are wearing traditional Mexican[2] dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts[3] and celebrations[4].

Mexican girls love bright colors[5]. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect[6] their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat.

There are lots of different styles[7] of sombrero.Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.



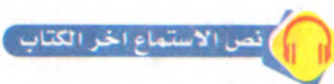
Arabic Meaning

١- دولة المكسيك
٢- مكسيكى
٣- أثناء الأعياد
٤- احتفالات
٥- ألوان زاهية
٦- يحمى
٧- أشكال



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My favorite clothes are T-shirts and ....

a sunglasses b skirts c galabeyas d shorts

2. I like my white .... socks in winter.

a cotton b leather c plastic d striped

3. My .... is striped.

a sweater b belt c crown d jacket

4. My favorite clothes are really ....

a old b smart c delicious d special

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. People wear a sombrero in ....

a Mexico b Japan c Finland d India

2. Hany's wearing a short .... shirt.

a sleeving b sleeved c sleeves d sleeve

3. It gets very cold, so we have to wear ....

a ties b shorts c sweaters d T-shirts

4. Our school uniform is made from ....

a cotton b silver c gold d wood

5. We wear .... around our necks at school.

a trousers b ties c skirts d shirts

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

celebrations - hats - dresses - gold - colorful (بني سويف - إدارة الواسطى (2024))

Girls in Mexico wear traditional Mexican dresses. They are very ❶ .... There are lots of colorful stripes on the ❷ .... They wear these dresses during feasts and ❸ .... Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear ❹ .... to protect their faces from the sun. It's a traditional Mexican hat.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. my - I - uniform - like - school. -
2. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love. -
3. wears - Rasha - shoes - leather - pair of - a new. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
4. bought - Hisham's father - a white - galabeya - cotton. - - - - - - - - - - - - -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like your school uniform -
2. these are my brother s favorite clothes. -

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your school uniform

Guiding questions

1- What's your school uniform?
2- What do boys and girls wear in your school?

- -

- -

- -

Review

Clothes ملابس



T-shirt
تى شيرت



sunglasses
نظارة شمس



swimming shorts
شورت سباحة (مايوه)



scarf
كوفية (شال)



sweater
بلوفر



sneakers
حذاء رياضى



galabeya
جلابية



necklace
عقد



pajamas
بيجامة



coat
بالطو



spotted
منقط



striped
مخطط / مقلم



suit
بدلة



crown
تاج



vest
صديرى



belt
حزام



tie
رابطة عنق (كرافتة)

Other words كلمات أخرى

trip	رحلة قصيرة
suitcase	شنطة سفر
uniform	زى موحد
Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية
popular	شائع
costume	زى خاص
special festival	احتفال خاص
shoemaker	صانع احذية
elf (elves)	جن / جنى صغير
kindness	عطف
celebrations	احتفالات
feasts	أعياد

Help your child revise Unit 3. ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.



ADJECTIVES صفات

exciting	شيق	cool	رائع / بارد
excited	متشوق - متحمس	comfortable	مريح
honest	أمين	amazed	مذهول
poor	فقير	surprised	مندهش
perfect	رائع	tired	مُتعب
special	مميز / خاص	hidden	غير ظاهر / خفي
popular	محبوب / شائع / شعبي	colorful	كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
remember	يتذكر	remembered
pack	يعبئ (شنط سفر)	packed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
protect	يحمى	protected
study	يذاكر / يدرس	studied
travel	يسافر	traveled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدى	wore
tell	يخبر	told
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
say	يقول	said
buy	يشترى	bought

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط



فاعل + will ('ll) + inf. (كل الضمائر)

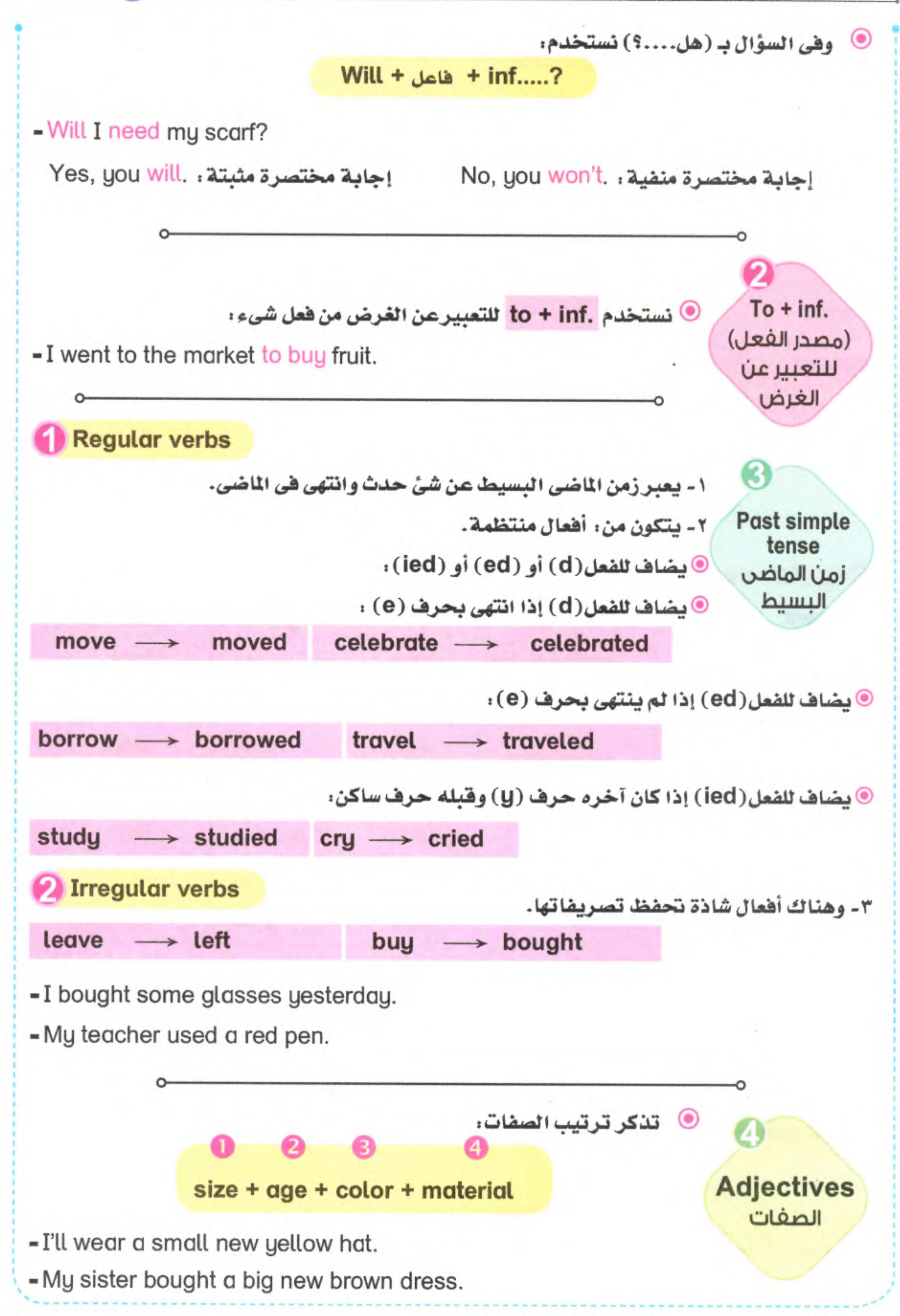
- يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث فى المستقبل.

- She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

- وفى النفى نستخدم:

فاعل + will not (= won't) + inf.

- You won't need your coat.



◉ وفى السؤال بـ (هل....؟) نستخدم:

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- Will I need my scarf?

Yes, you will. إجابة مختصرة مثبتة: No, you won't. إجابة مختصرة منفية:

---

2 To + inf. (مصدر الفعل) للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ نستخدم **to + inf.** للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شىء:

- I went to the market to buy fruit.

---

3 Past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1 Regular verbs

١ - يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن شئ حدث وانتهى فى الماضى.

٢ - يتكون من: أفعال منتظمة.

◉ يضاف للفعل (d) أو (ed) أو (ied):

◉ يضاف للفعل (d) إذا انتهى بحرف (e):

move ⟶ moved	celebrate ⟶ celebrated

◉ يضاف للفعل (ed) إذا لم ينتهى بحرف (e):

borrow ⟶ borrowed	travel ⟶ traveled

◉ يضاف للفعل (ied) إذا كان آخره حرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن:

study ⟶ studied	cry ⟶ cried

2 Irregular verbs

٣- وهناك أفعال شاذة تحفظ تصريفاتها.

leave ⟶ left	buy ⟶ bought

- I bought some glasses yesterday.
- My teacher used a red pen.

---

4 Adjectives الصفات

◉ تذكر ترتيب الصفات:

size (1) + age (2) + color (3) + material (4)

- I'll wear a small new yellow hat.
- My sister bought a big new brown dress.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to Texts

Lesson 3

The shoemaker and the elves

1 Yesterday, I read a story about the elves and the shoemaker. The shoemaker and his wife lived in town. He was poor, but he was kind and honest. At night the elves came to his workshop to make new shoes. The shoemaker and his wife made new clothes for the elves and they lived happily.

Lessons 4&5

My school uniform

2 I like my school uniform. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. They have to wear a blue tie every day. The girls wear white shirts and blue skirts. When it's cold, we wear blue sweaters.

Activity - Unit 3

Galabeyas

3 Galabeyas are the most popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. They are usually made from cotton. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets and long sleeves. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.

Al-Azhar Test اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Most men and boys wear .... in Eid. (shorts - galabeyas - pockets)
2. Galabeyas are made from .... (cotton - metal - plastic)
3. Galabeyas have .... sleeves. (short - long - colorful)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

wear - celebrate - striped - clothes

A : What are your favorite .... ?
B : I've got a .... dress and a necklace.
A : When do you .... them?
B : I wear them to .... Sham El-Nessim.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

I'll go to a trip to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I'll pack my suitcase. I'll need to take my sunglasses and shorts because it will be hot and sunny. I'll take my favorite pajamas. I like wearing the ones with the stripes. I won't take my sweater. I'll stay there for seven days.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When will you go to Al Fayoum? ....
2. Why will you need sunglasses and shorts? ....

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. I won't take my .... (shorts - pajamas - sweater)
4. I need the pajamas with the .... (spotted - stripes - pockets)
5. I'll stay in Al Fayoum for a .... (week - year - month)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. ---------- about my blue scarf?

   a Where   b When   c What

2. **A:** ---------- I need a coat? **B:** No, you won't.

   a When   b Will   c Would

3. My sister is wearing a ---------- dress.

   a spots   b spotted   c spotting

4. Yesterday, Hazem ---------- a new suitcase.

   a buy   b bought   c buys

5. Hisham used a pen ---------- his homework.

   a to write   b writing   c wrote

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. left - party - yesterday - Hoda - the.

----

2. shirts - does - Adel - Which - pack?

----

3. need - a coat - Will - and - I - a scarf?

----

4. take - my - jacket - I'll - blue - cotton.

----

5. wants - Egyptian - Tomas - clothes - to buy.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ayman went to the shops with his ....

a mother b father c friend d brother

2. Ayman went to the shop to buy a ....

a sweater b uniform c shirt d scarf

3. Girls wear dark .... skirts.

a blue b green c red d brown

4. Ayman liked his school ....

a teachers b books c bags d uniform

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is kind and .... All people love him. (بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا (2024))

a ugly b lazy c angry d honest

2. I wore sunglasses to protect my ....

a ears b eyes c hands d legs

3. We wear .... to play football. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024))

a suits b goggles c sneakers d rackets

4. When it's hot, I wear ....

a shoes b a jacket c shorts d boots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wear - have - skirts - sleeved - eat

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short ❶ .... white shirt. The girls wear blue ❷ .... and the boys wear blue trousers. We all ❸ .... to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here. But when it is cold, we can ❹ .... our blue sweaters.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister's birthday party was yesterday. My sister wore a white beautiful dress. She had a crown on her head. She looked like a princess. She had white gloves

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

on her hands. There was a gold necklace around her neck. I wore a black suit and black leather shoes. All the people at the party wore nice clothes. We had delicious meals. We sang and danced happily. The party finished at twelve o'clock at night.

الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين (2024)

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. It was my sister's ....
   a wedding b birthday c test d address
2. The party finished at .... o'clock.
   a twelve b nine c eleven d ten

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the sister look like? ....
4. What did the sister wear? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. made - leather - The - shoes - shoemaker. ....
2. did - pack - What - for - you - the holiday? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Sameh studied hard to .... (got) good grades.
2. I .... (buy) some clothes yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we won t need to take sweaters. ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Galabeyas

Guiding phrases

long robe - hidden pockets

....
....
....
....

Review 1



Objectives of Review 1

أهداف المراجعة الأولى

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1- 3.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطلاب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١ الى٣.

Lesson 3:

- To learn about a healthier life.

- يتعلم الطالب عن حياة أفضل صحيًا.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Listen and point: استمع و اشر:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص: 

1- beans	2- pineapple	3- chocolate
4- squash	5- mix	6- pour
7- football	8- kung fu	9- pajamas
10- sweater	11- swimming shorts	12- scarf
13- sunglasses	14- necklace	15- sneakers

Start



Finish

2 Look and write:

أنظر وأكتب (كالمثال):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

You mix the eggs and the flour to make pizza.





I've got striped pajamas.

3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. It's **healthy** / **unhealthy** to eat a balanced diet.
2. I need new swimming **boots** / **goggles** for my swimming lessons.
3. We wear new **galabeyas** / **belts** for Eid festivals.
4. Too many **emissions** / **greenhouses** from cars can cause pollution.
5. I'm so hot! Let's sit in the **shade** / **sun**.
6. I had an awful **jigsaw** / **nightmare**. I dreamed that I lost my cat!

4 Make sentences in the past simple:

كوّن جملاً باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط:

1. Mom / cook / molokhia / last Friday

   Mom cooked molokhia last Friday.

2. Salma / go / to the store / with her mom

   Salma went to the store with her mom.

3. My / grandma / travel / Port Said / last weekend

   ____

4. I / get / a new phone / a week ago

   ____

Lesson 2 ★ Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة:

Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:

1- sneakers | 2- tennis lessons | 3- oranges
4- carrots | 5- pajamas | 6- swimming

Mom : Are you ready, Mariam? We need to buy a lot of things in town.

Mariam : Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new .

Mom : Oh, yes, for your lessons next week. I need to get food from the market, too. We need and . Oh, and I also need to buy some new for Tarek. His are too small.

Mariam : Do we have time to go today, Mom?

Mom : Not today, Mariam. But we can go on the weekend.

2 Listen again and answer: استمع مرة أخرى للنص السابق وأجب:

1. What clothes do Mom and Mariam need to buy? They need to buy sneakers.
2. What fruit does Mom need to buy? She needs to buy oranges.
3. What vegetables does Mom need to buy? ....
4. Can Mariam go swimming today? ....

3 What did Maysa do yesterday? Look and write:

ماذا فعلت مايسة بالأمس؟ انظر واكتب:

1. Maysa got up at 6 am.
2. Maysa went to school at eight o'clock.
3. ....
....
4. ....
....

1 2 3 4

Lesson 3 Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Work in groups. Think about how we can be healthier. Look at the pictures and discuss:

اعمل فى مجموعات. فكر كيف تكون بصحة أفضل. انظر للصور وناقش:

Key vocabulary

healthier life	حياة صحية	perhaps	ربما
include	يشتمل على	not only	ليس فقط
meals	وجبات	mean	يقصد - يعني
junk food / fast food	طعام يحتوي علي سكريات ودهون أكثر	fewer cars	سيارات أقل
		less pollution	تلوث أقل



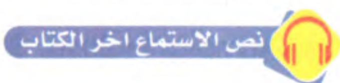
How can we live a healthier life?

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. **Junk food** isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football? Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends!

Activities on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My favorite recipe today is ....
   a lentils b koshari c basbousa d molokhia
2. I .... the ingredients by hand.
   a boil b mix c share d bake
3. I bake the basbousa in the .... for 30 minutes.
   a teaspoon b knife c oven d cupboard
4. I make the .... for about 10 minutes.
   a syrup b ingredients c recipe d dessert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My shoes are made of ....
   a feather b leather c wood d wool
2. I play .... on a small court with walls all round.
   a football b swimming c karate d squash
3. We can play tennis at the tennis ....
   a court b pitch c pool d house
4. I bought .... to keep me warm.
   a shorts b glasses c coats d skirts

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

uniform - dark - dress - pockets - tie

My name's Amir. At school, we have to wear a ❶ .... I have to wear a ❷ .... blue shirt and brown trousers. We have to wear a ❸ .... Girls have to wear a brown ❹ ....

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Hedaya won the .... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.
   a metal   b gold   c bronze   d silver
2. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .... player.
   a squash   b taekwondo   c karate   d tennis

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When was Hedaya Malak born? ....
4. What did Hedaya win at the age of fourteen? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. usually - What - you - wear - do? ....
2. squash - She's - good at - very - playing. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Are) there any sugar in the glass?
2. Ashraf is good at .... (plays) squash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

What will amira do next ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Fact file

Numbers of players	: 11 players
Place	: Club

Football

....
....
....



Myself and others

Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة.

2. Learn about Elephantine Island.

- يعرف الطالب معلومات عن جزيرة إلفنتين (فيله) (بمدينة أسوان).

3. Use sentences in the past continuous.

- يستخدم الطالب عبارات أو جمل فى زمن الماضى المستمر.

4. Learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.

- يتعلم الطالب ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.

5. Learn how to say three consonants together.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معاً.

6. Learn to correct spelling mistakes.

- يتعلم الطالب أن يصحح أخطاؤه الإملائية.

7. Write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

- يكتب الطالب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.

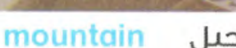


My visit to Elephantine Island

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:



mountain جبل


lake بحيرة



waterfall شلال



island جزيرة


forest
غابة


coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية


Aswan Botanical Garden
حديقة النباتات بأسوان


Temple of Philae
معبد فيلة

sunset	غروب الشمس	rare	نادر
Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء	reign	فترة حُكم



Other words كلمات أخرى

shape	شكل	trip	رحلة قصيرة
history	تاريخ	visit (n)	زيارة
calendar	نتيجة (تقويم)	walk (n)	تمشية
traffic	المركبات في حركة المرور	particularly	خصوصًا
city	مدينة كبيرة	felucca	مركب شراعي (فلوكة)
town	مدينة صغيرة	full of	مليء بـــ
leather	جلد مدبوغ		




ADJECTIVES صفات

fantastic	رائع	decorated	مزخرف / مزين
calm / quiet	هادي	famous	مشهور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
miss	يفتقد شخص	missed
try	يحاول	tried
walk	يسير (يمشى)	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
find	يجد	found
go	يذهب	went



Study the following

1. The Elephantine Island is full of history. - جزيرة إليفنتين (فيله) تزخر بالتاريخ.
2. There's lots to see. - هناك الكثير لتراه.
3. It's the most fantastic place! - إنها المكان الأكثر روعة.
4. It's the oldest part of Aswan. - إنها أقدم جزء في مدينة أسوان.
5. We went to Aswan Museum. - ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان.
6. We can go for long walks. - يمكننا التمشية لمسافات طويلة.
7. I was traveling by boat. - كنت مسافرًا بالقارب.
8. Can't wait to see you soon. - لا أطيق الانتظار لاراك قريبًا.
9. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.
   - أوقات غروب الشمس رائعة وخصوصًا وأنت في مركب شراعي.
10. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses.
    - لديهم منازل جميلة ومزينة بألوان زاهية.
11. We're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles. - سوف نمشي إلى مقابر النبلاء.

1 Listen and read the postcard. Where did Nagwa go?

استمع واقرأ البطاقة البريدية. أين ذهبت نجوى؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Hi Dalia!

How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island[3] and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's **lots** to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the **shape**!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum[4]. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very **rare** calendar from the reign of Thutmose III[5].

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The **sunsets** are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.



Temple of Philae[2]

We were walking in one of the Nubian villages[6] this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles[7] through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa



Aswan Botanical Garden[1]

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة النباتات بأسوان
٢- معبد فيلة
٣- جزيرة إليفنتين
٤- متحف أسوان
٥- تحتمس الثالث
٦- قرى نوبية
٧- مقابر النبلاء

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع (للنص السابق) مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Did Nagwa have a good trip? ....
2. Why is she feeling sad? ....

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Look at these rocks from the White Desert. What can you see? People often call them 'chicken and mushroom' rocks!

انظر إلى هذه الصخور من الصحراء البيضاء.
ماذا ترى؟ غالبًا ما يطلق عليها الناس صخور الدجاج والفطر!





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Alexandria is a big city in the .... of Egypt.

a south b north c east d west

2. Alexandria has beautiful ....

a schools b buildings c gardens d beaches

3. Many people come to Alexandria in the ....

a summer b winter c spring d fall

4. The people in Alexandria are ....

a unkind b friendly c excited d healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There is no ...., so the island is very quiet. (2024) الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

a traffic b farms c rivers d buildings

2. Alexandria is a .... (2024) الغربية - إدارة سمنود

a town b village c country d city

3. We could climb up the high .... yesterday. (2024) أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط

a lake b mountain c forest d island

4. The .... of Philae is in Aswan. (2024) الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين

a pyramid b temple c city d postcard

5. In the evening, I like to see the .... (2024) الدقهلية - إدارة المطرية

a sunburn b sunrise c sunset d sunshine

6. Elephantine .... is in Aswan. (2024) القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر

a Island b Country c Town d City

7. These coins are expensive because they are ....

a rare b terrible c poor d cheap

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

villagers - sunsets - south - temple - quiet

Aswan is a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very ❶ ---------- and the air is clean. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees. So it is quite green. The ❷ ---------------- are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. The Nubian ❸ ---------- have beautiful brightly decorated houses. You can go for walks to the tombs of the Nobles. Aswan is a very special place in the ❹ ---------- of Egypt.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - Aswan - live - Do - you? ------------------------ قنا - إدارة قوص (2024)
2. traveling - I - by - was - boat. ------------------------------------
3. live - you - a city - Do - in? ------------------------------------
4. most - the - It's - place - fantastic. ------------------------------
5. are - The - fascinating - buildings. -------------------------------

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I m missing you --
2. i met noha yesterday. ----------------------------------

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your city (Aswan)

Guiding phrases

fantastic town - no traffic

Lesson 2 What were you doing?





استمع إلى المفردات:

arrive at school	يصل إلى المدرسة	study English	يدرس اللغة الإنجليزية
get up	يستيقظ	have a great time	يستمتع بوقت رائع
have lunch	يتناول طعام الغداء	swim in the sea	يسبح فى البحر

Grammar — قواعد لغوية

1 Past continuous زمن الماضي المستمر



- نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي.
- يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلى:

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + ② was } + verb + ③ ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were

- I was traveling by boat to the island.
- We were trying to understand the lesson.

2 Question الاستفهام

- يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

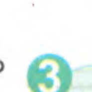
① (كلمة استفهام) + { ② was + ③ I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد ; were + you / we / they / اسم جمع } + ④ verb + ing...?

A : What were you doing? ماذا كنت تفعل؟

B : I was playing tennis.

- Was she listening to music?
  - Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.
- Were they making fatta?
  - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

3 Negative النفى



- لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + ② was } ③ not + verb + ④ ing.
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were

- I was not swimming in the sea. - We were not listening to music.

was not = wasn't were not = weren't

Keywords

while / as بينما / اثناء / when عندما / this morning هذا الصباح

while / as ⟶ ماضي مستمر ⟶ ماضي بسيط

when ⟶ ماضي بسيط ⟶ ماضي مستمر

- While we were looking at old things, we found a rare calendar.
- We were looking at old things when we found a rare calendar.

ملحوظة

- عند إضافة (ing) للفعل في الماضي المستمر يلاحظ الآتي:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) غير منطوقه تحذف (e) ويضاف (ing).

make ⟶ making / take ⟶ taking

see ⟶ seeing / be ⟶ being لكن لاحظ:

٢. عند انتهاء الفعل بـ حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ويضاف بعده (ing).

swim ⟶ swimming / shop ⟶ shopping

1 Read and choose: اقرأ واختر:

1. We were trying / trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name.

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

2. I were / was walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

2 Complete the table about the past continuous with the words in the box:

أكمل الجدول عن زمن الماضي المستمر بالكلمات الآتية:

she - Was - were

I	was	listening to the radio.
you / we / they	(1) - - - - - - - -	making a cake.
he / (2) - - - - - - / it	was	swimming in the sea.

Question

Was	I	listening to music?
Were	you / we / they	making fatta?
(3) - - - - - - - -	he / she / it	swimming in a lake?

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and **stopped / continued over a period of time** in the past.

4 Look and write. Use the past continuous:

انظر واكتب. استخدم زمن الماضي المستمر:



1. The fox ------ was sleeping --- **(sleep)**.
2. The fish -------------- **(swim)**.
3. The tiger ------------- **(drink)** water.
4. The people ------------ **(walk)**.
5. I ------------------ **(watch)** everyone.
6. We ----------------- **(have)** a great time.
7. ------- the cat --------- **(run)**?

5 What was Mona doing at different times yesterday? Look and write. Use the phrases in the box:

ماذا كانت تفعل منى في أوقات مختلفة أمس؟ استخدم العبارات الآتية:

arrive at school - get up - have lunch - study English



1 6 am: She was getting up.



2 8 am: --------------------



3 10 am: --------------------



4 3 pm: --------------------



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We were .... a good time at the zoo.
   a walking b having c arriving d making
2. The tiger was .... water.
   a drinking b swimming c sleeping d studying
3. What was Hoda doing at .... times?
   a unhealthy b dirty c different d polluted
4. They were .... by boat to the island.
   a listening b traveling c having d doing
5. I was making ....
   a English b fatta c school d water

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sleeping - The - was - fox. ....
2. having - a great - We - time - were. ....
3. in - The - swimming - was - the sea - fish. ....
4. they - Were - lunch - making? ....
5. doing - at - What - you - 9 pm - were? ....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She was .... (cooked) at 6 pm yesterday. أسيوط - إدارة صدفا (2024)
2. While I .... (sleep), my father came.
3. .... (Did) you listening to music?
4. Were they .... (walk) in the park at 5 pm?
5. When he .... (meets) his friend, he was going to school.
6. .... (Were) he swimming in the lake ?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

7. Were ---------- (he) making fatta ?

8. We were ---------- (have) a great time at the park.

9. ---------- (Were) the tiger running?

10. At 12 am, I ---------- (were not) studying. I was sleeping.

11. Were the boys ---------- (play) football?

12. My mom was ---------- (shops) at the market at 6 p.m.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. was Dalia studying English

----

2. i was visiting a Nubian village

----

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

What were you doing at different times yesterday?

Guiding questions

1- Where were you at 7 a.m yesterday?

2- Who was with you?

Lesson 3 PART 1 ★ Eco-tourism





استمع إلى المفردات:

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	hotel	فندق
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	wildlife	الحياة البرية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	pollution	التلوث
environment	البيئة	dive (d)	يغطس

Other words كلمات أخرى

local people	السكان المحليون	oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)
journey	رحلة طويلة	UNESCO*	منظمة اليونيسكو
culture	ثقافة / حضارة	Eco village	قرية بها سياحة بيئية
historical places	أماكن تاريخية	pros	مميزات
exciting	مثير	cons	عيوب
project	مشروع	comfortable	مريح
presenter	مقدم برامج	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي		

Definitions تعريفات

Eco-tourism السياحة البيئية: It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

UNESCO: United Nation Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization. منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية والعلم والثقافة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
create	يخلق / ينشيء	created
damage	يتلف / يدمر	damaged
relate to	يتعلق بـ	related to
work out	يستنتج	worked out
preserve	يحفظ	preserved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pay	يدفع مالاً	paid
see	يفهم - يرى	saw
learn	يتعلم	learnt
dive	يغطس	dove / dived

Grammar قواعد لغوية

by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات

◉ يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر **by - in - on** مع وسائل المواصلات كالآتي:

by

- **by** + (ليس بينهما فاصل) وسيلة مواصلات
- **by car - by train - by bus - etc.....**

- ولكن نقول **on foot** بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

in - on

- **in** + (a / an / the / my..... وبينهما فاصل) + وسيلة مواصلات

- نستخدم (in) مع وسيلة مواصلات التى لا يمكن المشي داخلها .

- **in a / my car - in a / the taxi**

- **on** + (بينهما فاصل) + وسيلة مواصلات

- نستخدم (on) مع وسائل مواصلات التي يمكن المشي داخلها.

- **on the bus - on the train**

- لاحظ: **on my bike / horse**

Study the following

1. Tourism gives jobs for local people.
- توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.

2. Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
- تسبب السياحة الكثير من غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون نتيجة الرحلات الجوية.

3. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.
- تساعد السياحة الناس على التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.

4. Tourism damages the natural environment.
- تضر السياحة بالبيئة الطبيعية.

5. Tourism damages historical places or monuments.
- تضر السياحة بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.

6. Eco-tourism looks after the environment.
- تعتنى السياحة البيئية بالبيئة.

7. Eco-tourism is not as comfortable as normal tourism.
- السياحة البيئية ليست مريحة مثل السياحة العادية.

8. Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes.
- يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالدراجات.

9. Eco-tourists like to stay in small local hotels.
- يحب السياح البيئيون الإقامة في فنادق محلية صغيرة.

10. Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.
- يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

1 Think about tourism. Check (✓) the good things and cross (x) the bad things:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام فوائد السياحة وعلامة (✗) أمام أضرارها:

Tourism...

1. gives jobs for local people. ✓
2. creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. ☐
3. helps people learn about new cultures. ☐
4. damages the natural environment. ☐
5. damages historical places or monuments. ☐

2 Listen to Sherif. What is eco-tourism?

استمع إلى شريف. ما هى السياحة البيئية؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Presenter : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide[1] in Hurghada[2]. Tell us about eco-tourism[3], please. What is it?

Sherif : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

Presenter : How does it help the environment[4] and people?

Sherif : Eco-tourists[5] don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution[6] planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

Presenter : I see. Where do they stay?

Sherif : They don't like big hotels[7]. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Presenter : What do they do when they travel?

Sherif : They like to learn about local wildlife[8] projects and local culture.

Presenter : Can you give me an example?

Sherif : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving[9] the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

Presenter : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

Arabic Meaning

١- مرشد سياحي
٢- مدينة الغردقة
٣- السياحة البيئية
٤- البيئة
٥- السائحون البيئيون
٦- التلوث
٧- فنادق
٨- الحياة البرية المحلية
٩- حفظ/حماية

3 Listen and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

استمع وأكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التي بالأطار:



Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

1- **Sherif** : Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.

2 - **Sherif** : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

3- **Sherif** : They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

4- **Sherif** : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

5 - **Sherif** : Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

6- **Sherif** : Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

coral - dive - environment - hotels - wildlife - pollution

1. Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.
2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the .... that planes cause.
3. They stay in small, local .... or pay to stay in people's houses.
4. They like to learn about local .... projects and local culture.
5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the .... reefs.
6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can ....



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef

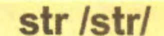


Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village

Lesson 3 PART 2 ★ Pronunciation

- في هذا الدرس يقوم الطالب بالتعرف علي بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها وهذه نماذج منها:


استمع إلى المفردات



str /str/


street شارع


string حبل

strawberry
ثمرة فراولة


strong قوي

scr /skr/

screw
مسمار قلاووظ
(بورمة)



scratch
يخدش (يخربش)


scream يصرخ

screen شاشة

- في الكلمات السابقة ينطق حرف (s) كما هو (س) وينطق حرف (c) مثل نطق حرف (k).

thr /θr/

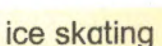

throw
يرمي / يلقي


three ثلاثة


throne عرش


throat
حلقوم (حَلْق)

- لاحظ نطق (th) في الكلمات السابقة مثل حرف (ث)

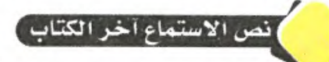


Other words كلمات أخرى

ice skating	التزلج علي الجليد
chocolate	شيكولاتة
pearl	لؤلؤ
belt	حزام
sneakers	حذاء رياضي

1 Read and write. Then listen and repeat:

اقرأ واكتب. ثم استمع وردد





استمع إلى النص:

The king sat on his ❶ ....throne........ eating ❷ .... on a ❸ .... He was ❹ .... his ❺ .... He heard a ❻ .... A ❼ .... man came to help.

2 Look and check (✓) the correct words. Correct the spelling mistakes in the other words:

انظر وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات الصحيحة. قم بتصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية في الكلمات الأخرى:

❶ 

milc

----- milk -----

❷ 

cake

----

❸ 

chokolate

----

❹ 

ise skating

----

❺ 

lakke

----

❻ 

beans

----

❼ 

belt

----

❽ 

perls

----

❾ 

sneekers



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hala's birthday was __________ .

a yesterday b today c last week d tonight

2. Hala's mom made a nice __________ cake.

a apple b strawberry c orange d banana

3. Hala's friends gave her nice __________ .

a presents b cakes c games d clothes

4. Hala and her friends played __________ .

a football b matches c video games d tennis

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists stay in small, local __________ . قنا - إدارة قوص (2024)

a huts b shapes c emissions d hotels

2. Eco-tourism is __________ for the environment. اسيوط - إدارة أبنوب (2024)

a bad b harmful c hard d helpful

3. Tourists __________ in the Red Sea. القاهرة - إدارة مصر الجديدة (2024)

a plant b dive c build d drive

4. Eco-tourism looks __________ the environment. الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة (2024)

a up b at c for d after

5. I can carry this heavy bag. I'm __________ .

a weak b strong c strange d string

6. Eco-tourists like to travel __________ bikes.

a in b by c at d of

7. There are many coral __________ in the Red Sea.

a loaves b leaves c lives d reefs

8. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the __________ that planes cause.

a pollution b journey c pros d comfortable

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

9. My favorite fruit is the ....

a straw b strawberry c strong d screw

10. Eco-tourists like to learn about .... projects and local culture.

a energy b hotel c journey d wildlife

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plane - pollution - exciting - local - hotels

Eco-tourism is important in our life. It looks after the environment and helps ❶ .... people. Eco-tourism don't like to travel by ❷ .... because of the ❸ .... that planes cause. They stay in small ❹ .... or pay to stay in people's houses.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - tour - Sherif - our - guide.

....

2. have - We - some - projects - nice.

....

3. does - it - How - environment - help?

....

4. The king - on - sat - throne - his.

....

5. gives - local - Tourism - for - jobs - people. قنا - إدارة قوص (2024)

....

6. like - to - local - Tourists - learn - about - culture. الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة (2024)

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. Tourists come to the Red sea to dive ....

2. How does eco-tourism help egypt ....



Lessons 4&5

★ Taba: My favorite eco-resort
★ Project





استمع إلى المفردات:

eco-resort	منتجع بيئى	wildlife	حياة برية
eco-lodges	نزل بيئية/ أماكن سكن صديقة للبيئة		

Holiday Activities أنشطة للإجازات



hiking	السير لمسافات طويلة	diving	الغطس
camping	إقامة المعسكرات (التخييم)		

Adjectives صفات



excellent	ممتاز	friendly	ودود
fascinating	مبهر/ خلاب	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
fantastic	رائع	cool	لطيف
perfect	تام/ كامل	main	أساسي/ رئيسي
round	مستدير	rare	نادر

Other words كلمات أخرى



valley	وادي	structure	بناء
Nubian ibex	حيوان الوعل النوبي	building	مبنى
camp	مخيم / معسكر	hut	كوخ
eco-destination	مقصد بيئى / وِجْهَةَ بيئية	way of life	أسلوب الحياة



Study the following

1. Taba is an excellent example where eco-tourism works well.

- تُعد طابا نموذجًا ممتازًا حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل جيدًا.

2. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba.

- يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا.

3. The buildings are fascinating.

- المباني مبهرة.

4. Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

- يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة في المخيمات والنزل البيئية.

5. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea in Taba.

- يمكنك أن تجد وديان وجبال وصحراء وبحر في طابا.

6. The local people are very friendly.

- السكان المحليون ودودون جدًا.

7. If you like history, there is lots in Taba.

- إذا كنت تحب التاريخ فيوجد في طابا الكثير من الأشياء التاريخية.

8. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

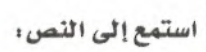
- يمكن أن تجد كل ما يتعلق بإجازة رائعة في طابا.

9. Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt.

- تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر.

10. We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

- لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.



1 Look and read. Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

انظر واقرأ. لماذا تُعد طابا مدينة جيدة للسياحة البيئية؟



استمع إلى النص:

Eco-tourism in Egypt



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

Taba is an excellent[1] example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.

You can find valleys[2], mountains, desert[3], and the sea there.

You can find fantastic wildlife[4] in Taba, like the Nubian ibex[5] and rare birds.

This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly[6], so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis[7], a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating[8]!



Nawamis Structure - Sinai, Egypt

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking[9], and camping[10]. They can stay in camps[11] and eco-lodges[12].

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

Arabic Meaning

١- ممتاز
٢- وديان
٣- صحراء
٤- حياة برية
٥- حيوان الوعل النوبي
٦- ودوديين
٧- نواميس (قرية بدوية بجنوب سيناء)
٨- مبهر/خلاب
٩- السير لمسافات طويلة
١٠- إقامة المعسكرات/ التخييم
١١- معسكرات
١٢- نزل بيئي

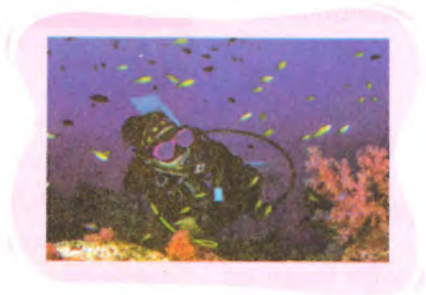
Perfect[1] eco-tourism in Egypt



Meet the local people
Talk to them about their way of life [2].



Enjoy the local culture[3]
Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike[4], swim, and dive.



Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and eco-friendly[5].



Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع
٢- أسلوب حياة
٣- ثقافة
٤- يسير لمسافات طويلة
٥- صديق للبيئة



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hurghada is a/an __________ .

a tourism b eco-resort c tourist d electricity

2. The buildings in Taba are __________ .

a fascinating b friendly c kind d health

3. Taba is a/an __________ eco-resort.

a round b harmful c bad d excellent

4. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, __________ and camping.

a hiking b building c writing d reading

5. In Taba, you can stay in __________ .

a valleys b eco-lodges c tourism d wildlife

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed's holiday was fantastic. He spent it in Taba. Taba is a famous and beautiful place. Ahmed arrived there at eleven thirty. His cousins were waiting for him at the bus stop. They took him home. There, he met his uncle and his uncle's wife. They spent that day at home. The next day, they went to the beach and enjoyed swimming and playing. Ahmed saw a lot of tourists from different countries. Tourists always come to Taba to enjoy the blue sea and the coral reefs. Ahmed was very happy because he enjoyed that week very much.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed spent __________ with his uncle in Taba.

a two weeks b a month c a week d a day

2. Ahmed arrived at the bus stop at Taba at __________ .

a 11.30 b 11.00 c 7.30 d 12.30

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How did Ahmed go to Taba? ______________________________

4. Why do tourists like to visit Taba? ______________________________

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. very - The - friendly - are - people. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر (2024)

2. are - The - fascinating - buildings.

3. an - Taba - excellent - is - eco-resort.

4. camps - stay - can - Eco-tourists - in.

5. wildlife - can - find - fantastic - Taba - in - You.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. you can find everything in taba

2. would you like to stay in a hotel

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Guiding phrases

- exciting idea
- helpful for environment

Review

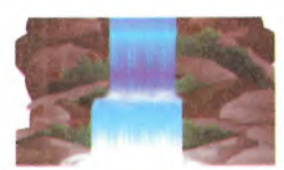
Key vocabulary




mountain جبل




lake بحيرة



waterfall شلال




island جزيرة



forest
غابة



coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية



Aswan Botanical Garden
حديقة النباتات بأسوان



Temple of Philae
معبد فيلة

lots	الكثير	rare	نادر
sunset	غروب الشمس	reign	فترة حُكم
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	pollution	التلوث
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	dive (d)	يغطس
eco-resort	منتجع بيئى	wildlife	حياة برية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	hotel	فندق
environment	البيئة	felucca	مركب شراعي (فلوكة)

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Past continuous زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي.
- يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلى:

1	2	3
I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد +	was	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع +	were	

- The atmosphere **was changing** a little.

◉ يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

① (كلمة استفهام) + { was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد ; were + you / we / they / اسم جمع } ② ③ + verb+ing...? ④

A : What were you having?
B : I was having lunch.

- Were you watching TV? - Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't.

◉ لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was ; You / We / They / اسم جمع + were ② } ③ not + verb + ④ ing.

- We were not having a good time.

was not = wasn't were not = weren't

Keywords

while / as بينما / أثناء / when عندما / this morning هذا الصباح

while / as → ماضي مستمر → ماضي بسيط

when → ماضي بسيط → ماضي مستمر

2 by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات

◉ يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات كالآتي:

by

by + (ليس بينهما فاصل) وسيلة مواصلات

by car - by train - by bus - etc.....

- ولكن نقول on foot بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

in - on

• in + (a / an / the / my..... وبينهما فاصل) + وسيلة مواصلات

- نستخدم (in) مع وسيلة مواصلات التى لا يمكن المشي داخلها .

- in a / my car - in a / the taxi

• on + (بينهما فاصل) + وسيلة مواصلات

- نستخدم (on) مع وسائل مواصلات التي يمكن المشي داخلها.

- on the bus - on the train

- لاحظ: on my bike / horse



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words

Answers to Texts

Lesson 1

Your city (Aswan)

1 I live in Aswan. It's a fantastic city. There's lots to see there. It has museums and temples. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. You can go on the Nile by boats. I love it very much.

Lesson 2

What were you doing at different times yesterday?

2 Yesterday was a holiday. At 7 am, I was getting up. At 8 am, I was having my breakfast with my family. At 10 am, I was watching TV with my father. At 3 pm, I was having lunch. It was a great day. All my family were having a great time.

Lessons 4&5

Eco-tourism in Egypt

3 Eco-tourism is an exciting idea in Egypt. It's helpful for the environment. Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes. They stay in small local hotels. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

Activity - Unit 4

My favorite eco-resort (Taba)

4 Taba is my favorite eco-resort. I can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. I can find fantastic wildlife, too. I can enjoy the environment. I can do a lot of activities. I like helping tourists.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hani does a lot of .... every day. (homework - activities - housework)
2. Hani was .... at 6 am. (sleeping - eating - playing)
3. Rasha was .... the flowers in the garden. (watering - planting - watching)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

helps - stay - hotels - pros

A : What are the .... of eco-tourism?

B : It .... the environment.

A : Where can eco-tourists .... ?

B : In small, local .... and people's houses.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went to Taba with my father and my mother. Taba is a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When did you go to Taba? ....
2. Who did you go to Taba with? ....

B- Choose the right answer:

3. Taba is a part of .... (Egypt - England - Libya)

4. You can find valleys and the .... in Taba. **(string - seed - sea)**

5. Eco-tourism works .... in Taba. **(will - well - bad)**

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. They were .... at photos.
   a) look b) looked c) looking
2. Samy can .... the ball to his friend, Gamal.
   a) throw b) scream c) try
3. The Elephantine Island is full of ....
   a) sunburn b) history c) traffic
4. **A:** .... do you stay? **B:** In a hotel.
   a) What b) Who c) Where
5. I go to school .... foot.
   a) by b) in c) on

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. can - stay - They - camps - in.

....

2. am - Island - on - I - Elephantine.

....

3. are - people - The - friendly - local.

....

4. was - listening - music - Hisham - to.

....

5. for - Tourism - jobs - people - gives - local.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sara went to the Elephantine .... last weekend. أسيوط - إدارة أبنوب (2024)

a Sea b Island c Farm d City

2. Elephantine Island is in ....

a Luxor b Cairo c Alexandria d Aswan

3. Sara visited .... to see the old things.

a hospital b school c museum d bank

4. She went on a .... trip on the island.

a plane b boat c truck d bike

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists stay in small, local ....

a huts b pools c shapes d emissions

2. .... helps people learn about new culture.

a Pollution b Farming c Tourism d Atmosphere

3. The Elephantine Island is .... of history.

a full b fall c fill d fell

4. A tourist was diving in the Red Sea near a .... reef.

a coat b coral c eco d project

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Red - dive - damaging - eco-resort - staying

My name's Tamer. I like going to Taba. It's my favorite (1) .... I like swimming in the (2) .... Sea. Tourists like (3) .... in hotels. They can (4) .... in the sea, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sharm El-Sheikh is the best place to visit in Egypt. I was so happy when I traveled with my uncle. He is a tour guide. He told me that Sharm El-Sheikh is good for eco-tourism because there are valleys, mountains, deserts and seas, so tourists can do different activities.

Tourists can enjoy hiking, camping and diving. Tourists can find everything in Sharm El-Sheikh for a great holiday.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is in ....

a Libya   b Jordan   c Egypt   d Oman

2. Eco means related to ....

a biology   b nature   c museum   d environment

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. What activities can tourists do in Sharm El-Sheikh? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. can - in - Tourists - the Red - dive - Sea. ....
2. find - You - can - wildlife - fantastic - Taba - in. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Noha was .... (watch) TV at 8 yesterday. الغربية - إدارة سمنود (2024)
2. While I .... (dive) in the Red Sea, I saw beautiful fish.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how is tourism important to Egypt ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your favorite eco-resort (Taba)

Guiding phrases

enjoy the environment - local people

....

....



Myself and others

Jobs we do

الوظائف التى نعمل بها



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.

- -يستمع الطالب و يقرأ و يقوم بعمل بحث و يكتب عن أنواع الوظائف المختلفة فى مصر القديمة.

2. Understand ecosystems.

- يفهم الطالب عن النظم البيئية.

3. Practice using the present simple to talk about routines.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الروتين (العادات و الممارسات المعتادة).

4. Practice using *must* to talk about obligation.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (must) (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الالزام.

5. Understand and discuss a traditional tale.

- يفهم الطالب و يناقش إحدى القصص القديمة.

6. Learn to say words with diphthongs.

- يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول الكلمات التى بها ادغام (دمج نطق حرفين متحركين متلاصقين)

7. Understand pie charts.

- يفهم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية.

8. Write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

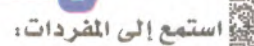
- يكتب الطالب عن مميزات و عيوب الوظائف المختلفة.

9. Make a poster about teamwork.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق يعبر عن العمل الجماعى.

Lesson 1 ★ Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


sculptures
تماثيل


grains
حبوب


hieroglyphs
الكتابة الهيروغليفية


scribe
كاتب (عند الفراعنه)


jewelry
مجوهرات


records
سجلات


farmers
فلاحين


paintings
لوحات


craftsmen
حرفيين


flax
بذور الكتان

female ruler	الملكة الحاكمة	medicine	دواء
pharaohs	الفراعنة	income	دَخْل مالي / إيراد

Important jobs وظائف هامة

doctor	طبيب	trader	تاجر
fisherman	صياد	craftspeople	حرفيين
baker	خباز		

Other words كلمات أخرى

signs	رموز / علامات	wheat	قمح
crops	محاصيل	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
sandals	صندل	basket	سلة
rows	صفوف	queen	ملكة
columns	اعمدة	temple	معبد
as well	أيضًا	medical school	مدرسة أو كلية لتعليم الطب

Adjectives صفات

successful	ناجح
colorful	زاهى / كثير الألوان
expensive	غالى الثمن
ancient	قديم
medical	طبى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
plant	يزرع	planted
cook	يطهى	cooked
bake	يخبز	baked
consist of	يتكون من	consisted of

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
become	يصبح	became
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
weave	ينسج	wove
spend	يقضى (وقت)	spent
take care	يعتنى بـ	took care



Study the following

1. **People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.** – كان يعمل الناس فى مصر القديمة بجد.
2. **People could work as fishermen.** – استطاع الناس أن يعملوا كصيادين.
3. **Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt.** – تجلب الزراعة كثيراً من الدخل لمصر.
4. **Craftsmen made beautiful things.** – صنع الحرفيون أشياء جميلة.
5. **Craftsmen used to weave beautiful clothes.** – اعتاد الحرفيون على نسج ملابس جميلة.
6. **Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs.** – قضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة فى تعلم الهيروغليفية.
7. **The Ancient Egyptians were very successful!** – كان القدماء المصريون ناجحون جدًا.
8. **Hatshepsut was a famous female ruler of Egypt.** – كانت الملكة حتشبسوت حاكمة مشهورة لمصر.

1 Listen and read. Why couldn't many people work as scribes?:

استمع واقرأ. لماذا لم يتمكن العديد من الناس العمل ككتبة؟

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

 استمع إلى النص:


Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.
Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen(1), bakers, doctors, and traders.
But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops(2), usually grains(3) like wheat, corn, and flax(4). They grew vegetables and fruits, too.
Ancient Egyptian craftsmen(5) were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures(6). They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes(7). Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave(8) baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs(9). One famous queen(10) in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

Arabic Meaning

١- صيادون
٢- محاصيل
٣- حبوب
٤- بذور الكتان
٥- حرفيين
٦- تماثيل
٧- كتبة
٨- ينسج
٩- فراعين (ملوك)
١٠- ملكة

2 Listen again and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع مرة آخرى واكتب (صح) أم (خطأ)

		True	False
1	Everyone in Ancient Egypt could become a scribe.		F
2	Craftspeople made beautiful things.		
3	Women worked at home only.		
4	Farmers could plant fruit, vegetables, and grains.		
5	There were very few jobs in Ancient Egypt.		



3 Listen and repeat. Then match the words to their descriptions:

استمع وردد ثم صل الكلمة بتعريفها :

Doctor - Craftsman - Trader - Scribe - Hieroglyphs

1- ....Scribe.... People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

2- .... People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

3- .... If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

4- .... A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

5- .... Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

4 Look at these jobs. Choose one and write 2-3 descriptions, like the ones in Exercise 3

انظر إلى هذه الوظائف. اختر واحدة واكتب (٢ - ٣) جمل وصفية مثل التمرين رقم (٣):

fisherman - farmer - teacher

Farmers : People with this job were very important. They worked hard in the fields and planted many crops.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt

أكثر من ٢٥٪ من المصريين يعملون فى الزراعة ، فالزراعة تجلب دخلًا كبيرًا لمصر.





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. ---------- worked at home in Ancient Egypt.
   a Queens b Women c Children d Men
2. Women cooked ---------- .
   a cakes b pizza c meals d pasta
3. Women could take care of their ---------- .
   a brothers b parents c fathers d children
4. Women could sell baskets at ---------- .
   a school b home c the market d the hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ---------- helps sick people. الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه (2024)
   a teacher b doctor c scribe d trader
2. A / An ---------- knew how to read and write well. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه (2024)
   a scribe b cleaner c trader d farmer
3. I saw a ---------- who caught a big and beautiful fish
   a fisherman b chef c carpenter d baker
4. ---------- could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt. أسيوط إدارة - ملفلوط (2024)
   a Traders b Scribes c Farmers d Doctors
5. I want to be a ---------- . I like making beautiful pots from clay. الغربية إدارة - سمنود (2024)
   a trader b scribe c fisherman d craftsman
6. ---------- are crops like wheat, corn and flax.
   a Painting b Baskets c Records d Grains
7. ---------- had to go to medical schools.
   a Doctors b Scribes c Craftsmen d Farmers
8. Craftsmen ---------- beautiful paintings and jewelry.
   a planted b made c cooked d played
9. ---------- was a system of writing. People used it in Ancient Egypt.
   a Hieroglyphs b Paintings c Pots d Medicine

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

work - successful - knew - grew - hard

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Everyone ❶ .... that work was important for life. They worked very ❷ .... They could ❸.......................... as fishermen, bakers, doctors and traders. The Ancient Egyptians were very ❹ ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. could - Women - baskets - weave. ------------------------------
2. writing - Egyptian - The - easy - wasn't. ------------------------------
3. in - worked - Ancient - People - Egypt - hard. ------------------------------
4. was - famous - Hatshepsut - a - female - ruler. ------------------------------
5. brings - to - Farming - income - a lot of - Egypt. ------------------------------

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. they worked as fishermen ------------------------------
2. why does Mustafa like clay ------------------------------

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

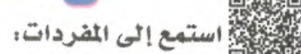
Guiding phrases:

many jobs - very hard

Lesson 2 Part 1

Science Ecosystems

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

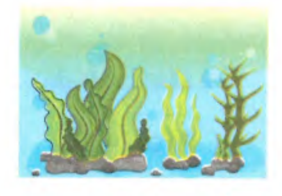

fish
سمك


sunlight
ضوء الشمس


rocks
صخور


crab
كابوريا


rainforest
غابة مطيرة


seaweed
أعشاب بحرية / طحالب


sand
رمل


insect
حشرة

Ecosystems
النظم البيئية

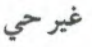

Freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئى للمياه العذبة


Marine ecosystem
النظام البيئى البحرى


Rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئى للبحيرات الصخرية


Desert ecosystem
النظام البيئى الصحراوى

rockpool	بحيرة صخرية	non-living	غير حي
living	حي		







Other words كلمات أخرى

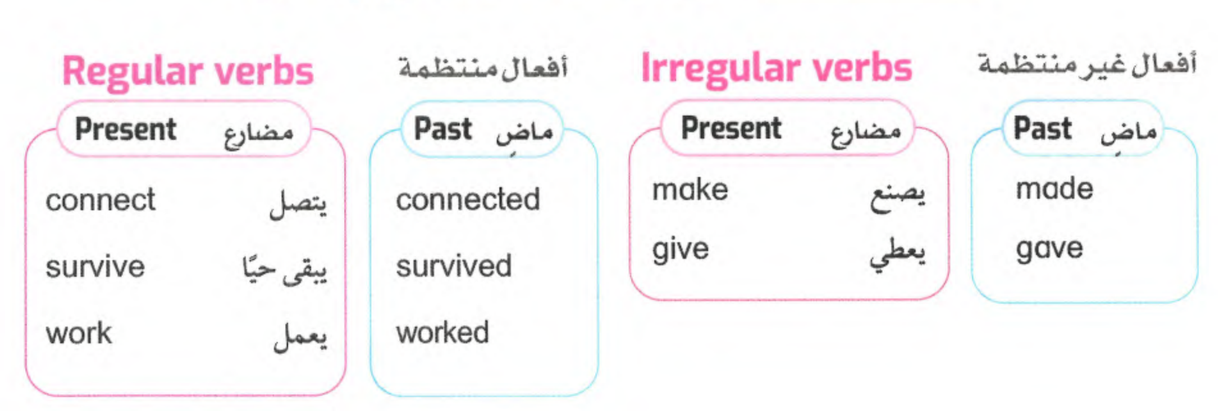


freshwater	ماء عذب	source	مصدر
connection	صلة / علاقة	areas	مناطق

ADJECTIVES صفات

natural	طبيعى	different	مختلف
connected	متصل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
connect	يتصل	connected
survive	يبقى حيًا	survived
work	يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
make	يصنع	made
give	يعطي	gave

Definitions تعريفات



living	حى	something that is alive
non-living	غير حى	something that isn't alive
ecosystem	نظام بيئى	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc.. in a place
rockpool	بحيرة صخرية	a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.



Study the following

1. **The River Nile is the most important source of freshwater in Egypt.**
- نهر النيل هو المصدر الأكثر أهمية للماء العذب في مصر.

2. **A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.**
- كثير من النباتات والحيوانات تعيش فى النهر أو بجواره.

3. **Everything in the natural world is connected.**
- كل شيء فى عالم الطبيعة مرتبط ببعضه البعض.

4. **The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.**
- الكائنات الحية في البحيرات الصخرية هى الأسماك والكابوريا والأعشاب البحرية.

5. **There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.**
- يوجد العديد من أنواع النظم البيئية على كوكب الارض.

6. **The non-living things are rocks, water, sand and sunlight.**
- الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس.

7. **This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem.**
- العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية و غير الحية تسمي بالنظام البيئي.

1 Think and say: فكر وقل :

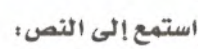
Think about the River Nile. It is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river. Name as many plants and animals that live in or near the river as you can.

----

2 Listen, read, and look. Are all ecosystems the same?

أستمع واقرأ وانظر. هل كل النظم البيئية نفس الشىء؟







a marine ecosystem

What is an ecosystem[1]?

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between **living**[2] and **non-living**[3] things is called an **ecosystem**. Ecosystems can be small, like a **rockpool**[4], or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest[5]. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.



a freshwater ecosystem



a desert ecosystem

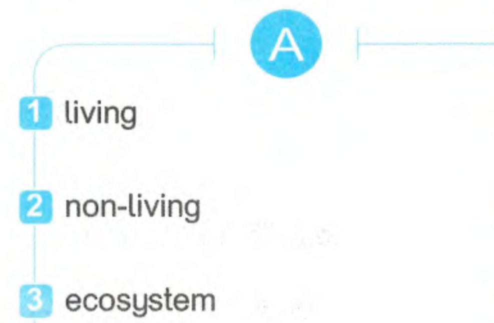


a rockpool ecosystem

Arabic Meaning
١- نظام بيئى
٢- حى
٣- غير حى
٤- بحيرة صخرية
٥- غابات الامازون الاستوائية

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بالخط العريض وصلهم بمعانيهم:



A

1 living

2 non-living

3 ecosystem

4 rockpool

B

a. something that isn't alive

b. all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place

c. a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

d. something that is alive



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Crabs and fish are ---------- things. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر (2024)

a living b rocks c non-living d rockpool

2. A ---------- is a small ecosystem. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة (2024)

a rockpool b river c city d village

3. Sunlight and water are ---------- things. دمياط - إدارة الروضة (2024)

a non-living b living c forest d thinking

4. ------ is the connection between living and non-living things. البحيرة - إدارة حوش عيسى (2024)

a Rockpool b Desert c Ecosystem d Plants

5. Everything in the natural world is ---------- .

a connected b given c worked d eaten

6. The ---------- things are things that aren't alive.

a living b non-living c rockpool d crabs

7. The River Nile is the most important source of ---------- water in Egypt.

a salt b sand c bad d fresh

8. ---------- is a small area of water with rocks, crabs and seaweed.

a Rockpool b Ecosystem c Desert d Forest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

natural - Earth - ecosystem - living - rocks

Yesterday, I had a science lesson at school. It was about the ❶ .... I learnt that everything in the ❷ .... world is connected. There's a connection between ❸ .... and non-living things. There are lots of different ecosystems on ❹ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living things and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water and sunlight.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a rivers b farming c ecosystem d sunlight
2. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and ....
   a seaweed b sunlight c water d sand

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is ecosystem? ....
4. What are the non-living things? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. What - is - ecosystem - an? ....
2. can - a rockpool - Ecosystems - be - like - small. ....
3. are - lots of - There - different - ecosystems - Earth - on. ....
4. is - the - The River Nile - source - important - fresh water - of. ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. all things work together ....
2. can you think of three things ....

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Rockpool ecosystem

Guiding phrases

- small area of water - living things

....

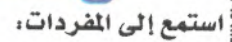
....

....

....

Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ Language focus

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Other words كلمات أخرى

boss	رئيس عمال	melon	شمام
zoo keeper	حارس حديقة الحيوان	midday	وسط النهار
sharp knife	سكين حاد	customer	زبون
bath	حمام	manager	مدير
make sure	يتأكد	menu	قائمة طعام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
ask	يسأل	asked
check	يفحص / يتأكد	checked
prepare	يُعد / يجهز	prepared
cook	يطهو	cooked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
drive	يقود	drove
cut	يقطع	cut
catch	يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1- The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Form التكوين

◉ يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع الآتي:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → + (inf.) فعل فى المصدر

- I eat fruit every day.

◉ ويضاف للفعل (ies / es / s) مع الضمائر (He / She / It).

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → + (inf.) فعل فى المصدر + {s / es / ies}

- He eats fruit.
- She catches a bus.
- He flies a plane

في حالة النفي

- نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم الجمع + don't + inf.

- They don't like fish.

- نستخدم:

He / She / It / اسم المفرد + doesn't + inf.

- She doesn't play tennis.

- لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم (never) فى النفى و تأتى قبل الفعل الاساسى و يبقى الفعل كما هو:

- She never eats fish.

في حالة الإستفهام

- نستخدم:

(كلمة استفهام) Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + inf...?

- Do you watch TV?
- Yes, I do. إجابة مثبتة. - No, I don't. إجابة منفية.

- نستخدم:

(كلمة استفهام) Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf...?

- Does he live in Cairo?
- Yes, he does. إجابة مثبتة. - No, he doesn't. إجابة منفية.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- تأتي الكلمات التالية مع زمن المضارع البسيط:

sometimes | often | usually | always | every day / week...

- ولها موضعان:

١- قبل الفعل العادي

- I sometimes visit my friend.

٢- بعد فعل (to be) في تصريفاته التالية are / is / am

- They are usually late for work.

ملحوظة

- الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف (ساكن) نحذف الـ (y) ونضع (ies) .

- He studies hard.

- ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضع (s) فقط ولا تحذف الـ(y).

- He plays computer games.

- الفعل المنتهى بالحروف الآتية (o - x - ch - sh - ss) نضيف للفعل (es) .

- He washes his hands.

2- must & mustn't

must + مصدر الفعل

◉ نستخدم .must + inf للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما :

- I must buy some oranges.

mustn't + مصدر الفعل

◉ ونستخدم .mustn't (must not) + inf للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- We mustn't talk in the library.

◉ لاحظ لا يأتي to بعد must / mustn't

1 Look, read, and write. Use the correct form of the verbs in the box :

انظر واقرأ واكتب : استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال الآتية :

ask - check - cook - cut - drive - open

1



1- I ....drive.... to work at 10 am.

2



2 - I .... the menu and make sure we have the right food.

3



3 - My boss .... me to prepare the vegetables.

4



4- I .... the vegetables with a sharp knife.

5



5 - At midday, the manager .... the restaurant.

6



6 -We .... lots of delicious food for our customers.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

1. Mrs Soha ..works.. (work) in a school.
2. My sister .... (study) at Mansoura University.
3. We .... (play) computer games at the weekend.
4. I .... (eat) yogurt and melon for breakfast.
5. Mr Said .... (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

3 Read. What is Walid's job?

أقرأ. ما وظيفة وليد؟

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!

Answer: zoo keeper



4 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't :

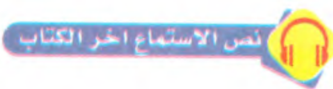
أكمل الجمل بـ mustn't أو must :

1. I ..must.. do my English homework. ✓
2. You .... walk on the grass. ✗
3. You .... look after the environment. ✓
4. Nadim .... tidy up the kitchen. ✓
5. Nahla .... wake her sick brother up. ✗
6. You .... forget to take a hat today. ✗



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Walid is a __________ .
   - a boss
   - b zoo keeper
   - c craftsman
   - d gardener
2. Walid looks after __________ .
   - a hippos
   - b lions
   - c giraffes
   - d monkeys
3. Walid must give hippos a __________ .
   - a food
   - b bath
   - c place
   - d melon
4. Walid must clean their __________ .
   - a bodies
   - b hands
   - c teeth
   - d legs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We must look __________ the environment.
   - a for
   - b at
   - c after
   - d in
2. My boss __________ me to prepare the vegetables.
   - a cut
   - b checked
   - c asked
   - d opened
3. We use a __________ to cut vegetables. (الإسكندرية - إدارة العصافرة (2024))
   - a spoon
   - b cage
   - c glass
   - d knife
4. Amr looks after elephants. He is a __________ . (القليوبية - إدارة طوخ (2024))
   - a doctor
   - b zoo keeper
   - c teacher
   - d dentist

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He __________ (don't) like karate. (الغربية - إدارة طنطا (2024))
2. We __________ (mustn't) tidy up our house. (القليوبية - إدارة الخصوص (2024))
3. We often __________ (visiting) our uncle on Fridays. (القليوبية - إدارة الخصوص (2024))

4. The farmer .... (grow) mangoes.

5. What .... (do) he played at the club every day? القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

6. Salma .... (always) drinks milk. She doesn't like it. القليوبية - إدارة الخصوص (2024)

7. He .... (cut) the vegetables with a sharp knife. الفيوم - إدارة سنورس (2024)

8. I .... (mustn't) do my homework. أسيوط - إدارة ملفلوط (2024)

9. They .... (come sometimes) to school late.

10. Hisham .... (playing) computer games every day.

11. They .... (mustn't to) play in the street.

12. Do you .... (preparing) the vegetables?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. clean - must - teeth - Magda - her.

....

2. must - Nadim - up - kitchen - the - tidy.

....

3. drive - I - work - 10 am - to - at.

....

4. mustn't - You - grass - walk - on - the. قنا - إدارة قوص (2024)

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what does Abdullah do

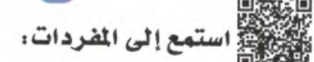
....

2. mustafa must look after the environment

....

Lesson 3 The Ant and the Grasshopper

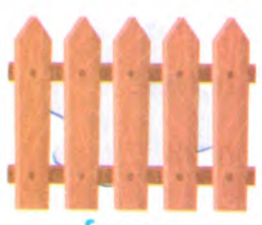
Key vocabulary


buzz
يطن (صوت النحلة)


ant
نملة


grasshopper
جرادة


fence
سور

Other words كلمات أخرى

hop away	يقفز بعيدًا	relaxing	مسترخي
rest against	يستريح مستندًا على	boring	ممل (غير ممتع)

Adjectives صفات

lazy	كسول	strange	غريب
cold	بارد	hungry	جوعان
surprised	مندهش	lovely	رائع
full of	ممتلىء بـ		

Other words كلمات أخرى



butterfly	فـراشــة	sound	صوت
fall	فصل الخريف	conversation	محــادثــة
spring	فصل الربيع	inside	بالداخل
winter	فصل الشتاء	garden	حديقة
suddenly	فجأة	field	حقل
soon	قريبًا	have fun	يستمتع بوقته

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضِ
carry on يستمر / يواصل	carried on
buzz يطن (صوت النحلة)	buzzed
harvest يحصد	harvested
reply يرد	replied
ignore يتجاهل	ignored
prepare يجهز	prepared
hop away يقفز بعيدًا	hopped away
knock on يطرق الباب	knocked on

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضِ
hear يسمع	heard
find out يكتشف	found out
understand يفهم	understood
shine تشرق الشمس	shone
spend يقضي وقت	spent

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 للسؤال عن أحداث تقع الآن

What + (am, is, are) + فاعل + v + ing?

- What are the butterflies doing?

وللاجابة :

- The butterflies are flying in the sun.

2 للتعبير عن الاقتراح

Why don't you + inf مصدر الفعل?

- Why don't you visit Luxor with me?

للاجابة بالموافقة :

- Sure, I think it'll be fun.

وللاجابة بالاعتذار:

- Thank you, but I need to do my homework.





Study the following

1. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers.
   - الشمس ساطعة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور.
2. It's a lovely day.
   - إنه يوم جميل.
3. The bees are buzzing.
   - النحل يصدر صوت الطنين.
4. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.
   - يقضى ذكر الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخيًا.
5. Why don't you stop working?
   - لِم لا تتوقف عن العمل؟
6. I need to carry on my work.
   - أريد أن أستمر فى عملى.
7. But working is so boring.
   - و لكن العمل ممل جداً.
8. We must think about the future.
   - علينا أن نفكر في المستقبل.
9. The ant doesn't stop working.
   - النملة لا تتوقف عن العمل.
10. It's very important to work hard.
    - من المهم أن تعمل بجد.

1 Listen and read. What does the Grasshopper want to do?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا يريد ذكر الجراد أن يفعل؟



استمع إلى النص:



1



2



It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields(1) and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects(2) to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound(3). He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.

Arabic Meaning
١- الحقول
٢- حشرات
٣- صوت

3

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies(4) the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper.

"Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.

4



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away(5).

٤- يرد
٥- يقفز بعيدًا

5



Soon, it is fall(6). The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested(7) all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

٦- فصل الخريف
٧-حصد
٨- فجأة
٩- يطرق الباب

6



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly(8), he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on(9) the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

2 Read and circle: اقرأ وضع دائرة:

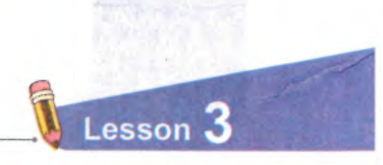
1. The grasshopper is surprised when he sees the ant because ...

   a The ant doesn't like playing football.

   b The ant is ignoring him.

   c The ant is working hard to prepare for winter.

   d The ant prefers to play with other insects.



2. The Ant and the Grasshopper teaches us ...

a that ants are boring insects.

b that it's important to work to prepare for the future.

c that some insects work harder than others.

d that it's important to have fun every day.

3 Discuss these questions with a partner: ناقش الأسئلة مع زميل:

1. What did the ant do during the spring? ---------------
2. What did the grasshopper do during the spring? ---------------
3. Was the ant prepared for the winter? ---------------
4. Was the grasshopper prepared for the winter? ---------------
5. What do you think the grasshopper will do next spring? ---------------

Pronunciation

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الأصوات المدمجة (المركبة) Diphthongs حيث تتكون من نطق حرفين متحركين جاءا فى كلمة وليس بينهما فاصل ونتج عنها صوت جديد.
- فمثلاً كلمة (town) لايفصل بين الحرفين المتحركين بحرف ساكن فيكونا مقطعًا صوتيًا واحدًا.

/aʊ/ ow - ou	
down	أسفل
town	مدينة
brown	بنى
loud	عالى الصوت
mouse	فأر

/aɪ/ y - igh	
why	لماذا
light	ضوء
buy	يشترى
eye	عين
try	يجرب

/ɔɪ/ oy - oi	
boy	ولد
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
point	يشير
toy	لعبة
noise	ضوضاء

- لاحظ فى الجزء السابق كل صوت والكلمات والحروف التى تمثله.

1 Listen and repeat :

استمع و ردد :

/ aʊ /	/ aɪ /	/ ɔɪ /
down	why	boy
town	light	enjoy

2 Say. Write the words in the correct group in Exercise 1:

قل. اكتب الكلمات حسب المجموعة الصحيحة وفقاً للتمرين رقم (١) :

1- brown	2- buy	3- eye
4- loud	5- mouse	6- noise
7- point	8- toy	9- try

/ aʊ /	/ aɪ /	/ ɔɪ /
brown	try	toy
....	....	....
....	....	....



- اللاحقة عبارة عن حرف أو مجموعة أحرف تضاف إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات فتغير معناها.
- وندرس هنا اللاحقة (-ist) التى تعنى أن شخص ما يقوم بوظيفة معينة ونستخدمها فى الكلمات التى تدل على الوظائف. فمثلاً كلمة (journal) يقصد بها جريدة وبعد إضافة (ist) إليها تتغير إلي كلمة (journalist) وتعنى (صحفى).

(ist) words


biologist
عالم أحياء


journalist
صحفى


receptionist
موظف استقبال


pianist
عازف بيانو


scientist
عالِم

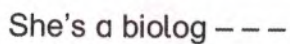

dentist
طبيب أسنان



انظر واكتب:







She's a biolog – – –



She's a pian – – –



She's a journal – – –



He's a reception – – –



He's a scient – – –





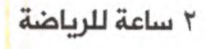
This is a pie chart

Pie charts الرسوم البيانية الدائرية

- الرسم البياني الدائري هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات:
- حيث نقسم الدائرة الى أجزاء حيث يمثل كل جزء معلومة ما فلو فرضنا اننا نريد تمثيل الاتى

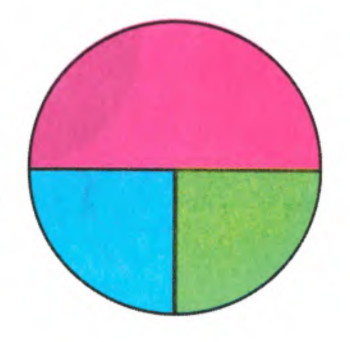
شخص يقضى ٨ ساعات فى عمل اشياء مختلفة

٤ ساعات للمذاكرة



٢ ساعة للرياضة

٢ ساعة للهواية



- يكون تمثيلها برسم بيانى دائرى كالتالى:

 المذاكرة

 الرياضة

الهواية

4 A pie chart is a way of showing information. Look. What is the most popular job? :

الرسم البيانى الدائرى وسيلة لعرض المعلومات .أنظر ما هى الوظيفة الأكثر شيوعًا؟:

What job do you want to do?	
police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19



5 Match the tables to the pie charts:

صل الجداول بالرسم البياني الدائري:

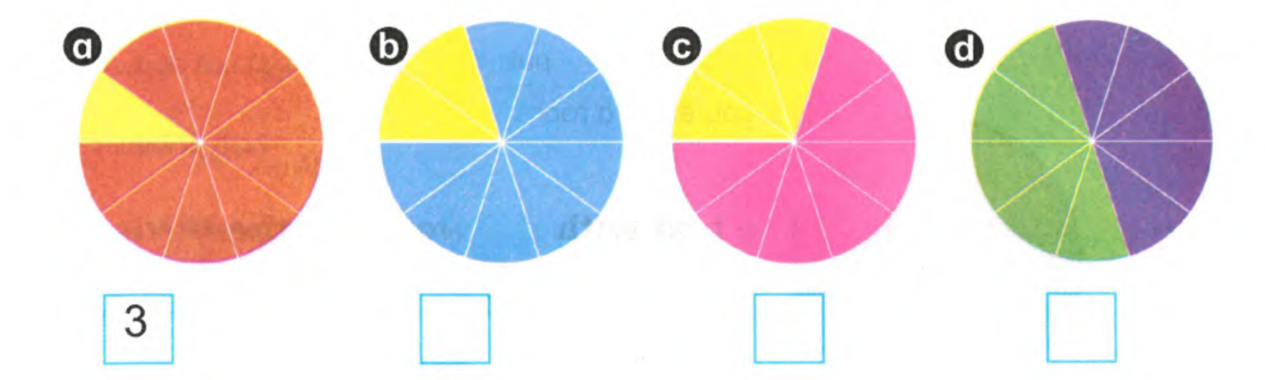
- انظر إلى الأرقام التى تمثل الرسم البيانى الدائرى ومن خلالها ستعرف ما تمثله كل دائرة كما بالمثال .

1- Do you want to work indoors or outdoors?	
indoors	7
outdoors	3

2- Do you want to wear a uniform at work?	
yes	2
no	8

3- Do you want to work with animals?	
yes	1
no	9

4- Do you want to work in an office?	
yes	5
no	5



a 3 b ☐ c ☐ d ☐



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Tamer's house has a big ....
   a garden b door c tree d street
2. There's a .... around Tamer's garden.
   a door b fence c wall d lake
3. Tamer waters the .... every day.
   a flowers b plants c trees d grass
4. Tamer plants .... seeds in the garden.
   a fruit b lentil c vegetable d bean

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I study plants. I am a .... أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط (2024)
   a dentist b vet c biologist d receptionist
2. The .... works in hotels. القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)
   a doctor b vet c teacher d receptionist
3. The .... are buzzing all the day. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه (2024)
   a dogs b cats c bees d foxes
4. I have a toothache. I am going to the ....
   a journalist b pianist c receptionist d dentist
5. I don't have time to play. I want to .... on with my work.
   a cry b carry c put d play
6. .... on the door before you enter a room.
   a Knock b Hop c Relax d Work

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

important - lazy - spring - winter - fun

Ants work hard. They are not ❶ .... They stop working in ❷ .... because it's cold. It's fine to have ❸ .... , but it is ❹ .... to work hard, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. day - a - It's - lovely.

2. bees - are - The - buzzing. (2024) الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة

3. want - to - I - dentist - be - a. (2024) القليوبية - إدارة قليوب

4. think - must - We - the - future - about.

5. flying - The - butterflies - are - the - in - sky.

6. don't - work - and - I'm - I - hungry - now.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The sun is .... (shine).
2. The gardens are full .... (at) flowers.
3. Why .... (aren't) you stop working?
4. We must .... (thinking) about the future.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what did amr do in the spring?

2. my friend Salma wants to be a doctor

Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing & Project

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:



vet
طبيب بيطرى


computer programmer
مبرمج كمبيوتر


operation
عملية جراحية



Other words كلمات أخرى

aim	هدف	solutions	حلول
solve problems	يحل مشاكل	teammates	زملاء الفريق
distance	مسافة	tropical	استوائى
experiment	تجربة فى المعمل	concert	حفل موسيقى
reports	تقارير	indoors	فى الداخل (داخل المبانى)
teamwork	العمل الجماعى	outdoors	فى الخارج (خارج المبانى)
I don't mind	لا أمانع	office job	وظيفة داخل مكتب
make friends	يكون صداقات	early	مبكرًا
scare	يخيف		





ADJECTIVES صفات

clean	نظيف	injured	مصاب / مجروح
dirty	متسخ	keen on	حريص على / متحمس لـ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
solve	يحل مشكلة	solved
mind	يمانع	minded
prefer	يفضل	preferred
work out	يستنتج / يجد حل	worked out

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
write	يكتب	wrote
get sick	يمرض	got sick
win	يفوز	won

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

السؤال عن التفضيل

Would you prefer / like to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

◉ السؤال عن تفضيل فعل / شئ نقول.

- Would you like / prefer to work as a vet?

◉ هل تفضل العمل كطبيب بيطرى؟

- Yes, I'd like / prefer to. وللاجابة بالإثبات: - I can work with animals. اجابة مثبتة كاملة:
- No, I'd prefer not to. والاجابة بالنفى: - I can't work with animals. اجابة مثبتة كاملة:

Study the following

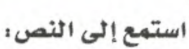
1. **I work with animals and I love my job.** - أعمل فى مجال الحيوانات، وأحب عملى.
2. **I help to make animals better.** - أساعد فى جعل الحيوانات أفضل.
3. **What's the worst part of the job?** - ما هو اسوأ شئ فى العمل؟
4. **I loved playing computer games.** - كنت أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
5. **I like traveling long distances.** - احب السفر الى مسافات بعيدة.
6. **I wanted an office job.** - أردت وظيفة فى مكتب.
7. **I'm good at making new friends.** - انى جيد فى تكوين صداقات جديدة.

8 **I work in a team for the school concert.** - أعمل فى فريق للحفل الموسيقى المدرسى.

9 **You can't win a football match by yourself.** - لا تستطيع الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك.

1 Read. What are Rana and Sherif's jobs? أقرأ، ما هى وظائف رنا وشريف؟







My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured[1], I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring[2] their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation[3], the room has to be very, very clean.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check[4] on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind[5]! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

Arabic Meaning

١- مصاب
٢- يحضر
٣- عملية جراحية
٤- يفحص
٥- يمانع

Rana is a doctor / (vet).

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare[1] me! I'm not keen on[2] being outside, so I wanted an office job[3].



When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems[4]. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree[5], but we work out the best solutions[6].

Arabic Meaning

١- يخيف
٢- متحمس لـ
٣- وظيفة مكتبية
٤- حل المشاكل
٥- يتفق
٦- حلول

Sherif is (a computer programmer) a computer programmer / vet.

2 Read again and answer : أقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب:

1. What does Rana like about working with animals?

---

2. Why did Sherif not want to work with animals?

---

3. Would you prefer to have Rana's job or Sherif's job? Why?

---

3 Read the ideas in the box and write about a job you want and a job you don't want. Give reasons. Write 30 – 40 words :

أقرأ الأفكار الموجودة بالجدول وأكتب عن وظيفة ترغب فيها وأخرى لا ترغب فيها. أعطى الأسباب. أكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة :

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about ...

- being indoors or outdoors
- traveling long distances
- getting up very early
- writing reports
- meeting / talking to new people

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

- solving problems
- helping sick people / animals
- making new friends
- reading lots of information
- working in a team

When I'm older, I want to be a ... because ... . I think this is a good job for me because I like ... . I'm good at ... and I enjoy ... .
I don't want to be a ... because I'm not good at ... . Also, I don't really enjoy ... .

4 Read. Can you think of other times when you work in a team? Do you like it?

أقرأ. هل يمكنك أن تفكر فى أوقات أخرى عندما كنت تعمل فيها فى فريق؟ هل تحب الأمر؟

Teamwork

I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.





I work in a team for the school concert(1).

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together(2). For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates(3) to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

Arabic Meaning

١- حفلة موسيقية
٢- معًا
٣- زملاء الفريق



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I love .... new friends.
   a doing   b making   c working   d planting
2. You can't .... a match by yourself.
   a bring   b write   c win   d eat
3. A .... helps to make animals better.
   a vet   b football player
   c computer programmer   d dentist
4. The operation room must be ....
   a dirty   b the worst   c clean   d bad
5. He is clever. He can .... out the solution.
   a help   b work   c agree   d enjoy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

check - scare - animals - better - bring

My sister is a vet. She works with sick ❶ .... People ❷ .... their animals to her. She helps to make animals ❸ .... She goes to people's houses or farms to ❹ .... on the animals.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Malek. When I grow up, I don't want to work with animals because they **scare** me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I want an office job. I love playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, when I grow up, I want to be a computer programmer. So, in my job, I will do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There will be a lot of people in my team. We won't always agree, but we will work out the best solutions.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Malek doesn't like to be ....
   a inside   b outside   c in a team   d with people

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. The underlined word "**scare**" means ....

a help   b play   c run   d make afraid

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why doesn't Malek want to work with animals?

---

4. What does Malek want to be when he grows up?

---

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. want - an - job - I - office.

---

2. make - animals - I - help - to - better.

---

3. enjoy - I - solving - really - problems.

---

4. wants - be - Sally - to - a - programmer - computer.

---

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. hello, I m Mohamed.

---

2. where does Ali have lunch

---

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A computer programmer

Guiding phrases

office job - solving problems

Review

Jobs in Ancient Egypt


sculptures
تماثيل


grains
حبوب


hieroglyphs
اللغة الهيروغليفية


scribe
كاتب (عند الفراعنه)


jewelry
مجوهرات


farmers
فلاحين


paintings
لوحات


craftsmen
حرفيين


records
سجلات

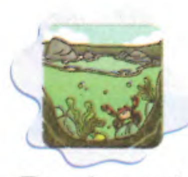

flax
بذور الكتان

Ecosystems


Marine ecosystem
النظام البيئى البحرى


Freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئى للمياه العذبة


Desert ecosystem
النظام البيئى الصحراوى


Rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئى لبركة مياه صخرية


crab
كابوريا


rocks
صخور


sunlight
ضوء الشمس


fish
سمك


rainforest
غابة مطيرة


insect
حشرة


sand
رمل


seaweed
اعشاب بحرية / طحالب

Help your child revise Unit 5. ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
plant	يزرع	planted
prepare	يجهز	prepared
carry on	يستمر فى	carried on
harvest	يحصد	harvested
knock on	يطرق (باب)	knocked on

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
become	يصبح	became
weave	ينسج	wove
spend	يقضى (وقت)	spent
leave	يترك / يغادر	left
understand	يفهم	understood
shine	تشرق الشمس	shone

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1-The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Form التكوين

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل.

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → + (inf.)فعل فى المصدر

- I eat fruit.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies / es / s) مع الضمائر (He / She / It).

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → + (inf.)فعل فى المصدر + s / es / ies

- He eats fruit. - She catches a bus. - He flies a plane

2- must & mustn't

- نستخدم .must + inf للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما.

- I must buy some oranges.

- ونستخدم .mustn't (must not) + inf للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- We mustn't talk in the library.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

1 There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers grew grains. They worked in fields very hard. Few people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write. Craftsmen made beautiful things. People could work as fishermen.

Lesson 2

Rockpool ecosystem

2 The rockpool is a small area of water with rocks. It's different from other ecosystems. It has living things in it. There are crabs, fish and seaweed. They are amazing things.

Lessons 4&5

Computer programmer

3 My name is Hisham. I work as a computer programmer. I don't like being outside. I want an office job. I enjoy solving problems and working with other people. I really like my job.

Activity - Unit 5

A job you like

4 I want to be a vet. I like helping sick animals. I play with all kinds of animals. I feel happy when I help any animal. It's a really good job.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Magdy is a ________. (dentist - zoo keeper - farmer)
2. Magdy looks after ________. (monkeys - lions - hippos)
3. ______ is important for animals. (Water - Juice - Oil)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

craftsman - doing - want - homework

A : What are you ______________________________________?

B : I'm doing my ______________________________________.

A : What do you ______________________________ to be in the future?

B : I want to be a ______________________________________.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women helped their husbands on farms. They grew a lot of crops.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Ancient Egyptian women work? ______________________________
2. What did Ancient Egyptian women cook? ______________________________

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Egyptian women took care of their __________. (work - children - teams)
4. Women helped their __________. (husbands - parents - sisters)

5. Ancient Egyptian women and their husbands grew many ----------.

(schools - crops - crabs)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The boys are ---------- football.

   a flying   b swimming   c playing

2. We mustn't ---------- in the library.

   a talks   b talk   c talked

3. Corn and flax are ----------.

   a fruits   b vegetables   c grains

4. We have a big ---------- around our garden.

   a room   b fence   c fan

5. My boss ---------- me to prepare the vegetables.

   a ask   b asks   c asking

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. doing - are - What - you?

   ----

2. works - animals - Nabil - with.

   ----

3. need to - I - my - carry on - work.

   ----

4. teammates - You - work - your - must - with.

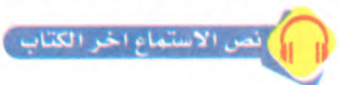
   ----

5. food - We - lots of - delicious - prepare.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. .... was very important in Ancient Egypt.

a Fishing b Farming c Writing d Playing

2. Farmers worked in their ....

a homes b schools c fields d temples

3. The fields were .... farmers' homes.

a far from b near c behind d in front of

4. Farmers grew many crops like ....

a grapes b jewelry c grains d cotton

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wheat, corn and flax are called ....

a vegetables b grains c fruits d places

2. Ancient Egyptian .... made beautiful paintings. الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر (2024)

a nurses b doctors c kings d craftsmen

3. I'm a vet. I help .... animals.

a well b sick c happy d big

4. Scribes spent many years to learn .... الدقهلية - إدارة المطرية (2024)

a science b hieroglyphs c art d English

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

working - playing - office - best - solving

My brother Samy is a computer programmer. He works in an ❶ .... He works hard. He can work out the ❷ .... solutions. He enjoys ❸ .... with other people and ❹ .... problems.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many kinds of animals and plants live in different ecosystems in the world. They make our life interesting. We should look after these animals and plants. They are very important. They need our help to survive a better life. So I plan to be a scientist to study different ecosystems and help these animals. The world should help, too.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about ....
   a animals and plants b football
   c school d city
2. Animals and plants make our life ....
   a bad b interesting c hard d fast

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do animals need our help? ....
4. What do you plan to be? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. and - things - Traders - sold - bought - different. ....
2. could - Scribes - everything - write - down. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We must .... (tidied) up our kitchen.
2. .... (Does) they play computer games at the weekend?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what does Adel do ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A job you like

Guiding questions

1- What do you want to be?

2- Why do you choose this job?

....

....



Myself and others

What's the weather like?

ما هي حالة الطقس ؟



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحثًا ويكتب عن الطقس.
2. Read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
3. Understand a text about natural resources.
   - يفهم الطالب نص عن الموارد الطبيعية.
4. Learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
   - يتعلم الطالب التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف غير المنطوقة فى الكلمات.
5. Write an account of extreme weather.
   - يكتب الطالب وصفًا عن الطقس القاسي.
6. Research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
   - يجري الطالب بحثًا ويصنع منشورًا حول ما يجب القيام به فى الطقس القاسي.

Lesson 1 The weather

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


cloud
سحابة


cloudy
ملبد بالغيوم


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر

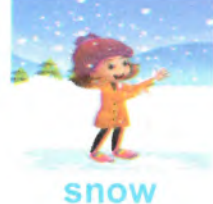

wind
رياح


windy
عاصف (شديد الرياح)




sun
الشمس

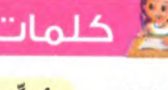

sunny
مشمس


snow
جليد


ice
ثلج


rainbow
قوس قزح


storm
عاصفة



Other words كلمات أخرى

presenter	مُقدِّم برنامج	night	الليل
weatherwoman	خبيرة الأرصاد الجوية	keep cool	يحافظ على برودته
news	أخبار	warm	دافئ
normal	طبيعى	per year	كل عام
shade	ظل	around	حوالى / تقريبا
special climate	مناخ خاص	day	النهار
variety	تنوع	degree	درجة الحرارة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	believed
ask	يسأل	asked
call	ينادي / يتصل	called
rain	تمطر	rained
stay	يمكث / يقيم	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
bring	يحضر	brought
come	يأتي	came
fall down	يسقط	fell down
get up	ينهض	got up
hear	يستمع	heard
run	يجري	ran

Study the following

1. **I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today.**
   - أنقل لكم اليوم أخبار الطقس فى مصر.
2. **It's going to be rainy in Cairo.**
   - سيكون الجو ممطرًا فى القاهرة.
3. **How often does it rain in Cairo?**
   - كم مره تمطر فى القاهرة؟
4. **It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.**
   - لم يحدث أن يكون الجو باردًا جدًا فى شرم الشيخ، ولكن اليوم لدينا بعض الثلج.
5. **Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!**
   - ستواجه الأقصر عاصفة، لذا ابق فى المنزل!
6. **We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt.**
   - لدينا تنوع رائع فى الطقس فى مصر.
7. **The desert has a very special climate.**
   - الصحراء لها مناخ ذات طبيعة خاصة للغاية.
8. **It was hot and sunny last weekend and I stayed at home.**
   - لقد كان الجو حار ومشمس نهاية الاسبوع الماضى ومكثت بالمنزل.
9. **The Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt.**
   - نهر النيل ذو أهمية كبيرة عند الجميع فى مصر.
10. **Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.**
    - الاسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار في القاهرة.





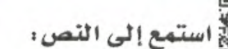
Language Functions
وظائف لغوية

للتنبؤ عن حالة الطقس

نستخدم:

It's going to be + حالة الطقس + المكان

- It's **going to be** hot in Egypt.



لاحظ

لاحظ الفرق بين (جليد snow) و (ثلج ice) حيث نستخدم كلمة (جليد snow) لوصف الجليد المتساقط من السماء وأعلى قمم الجبال ويكون لونه أبيض أما كلمة (ثلج ice) تصف الماء المجمد ويكون شفاف.

1 Listen and circle.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

استمع إلى النص:

- **What are they talking about?** عما يتحدثون؟

a) weather in four cities in Egypt
b) weather in five cities in Egypt

Weatherwoman : Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

Presenter : Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

Weatherwoman : I know, but today it's rainy.

Presenter : What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

Weatherwoman : It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

Presenter : I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

Weatherwoman : It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

Presenter : Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

Weatherwoman : Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

2 Read. Which city is very green? اقرأ. أي مدينة تعد الأكثر خضرة:

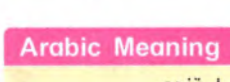


استمع إلى النص:

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety[1] of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry[2]. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees[3] in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees.

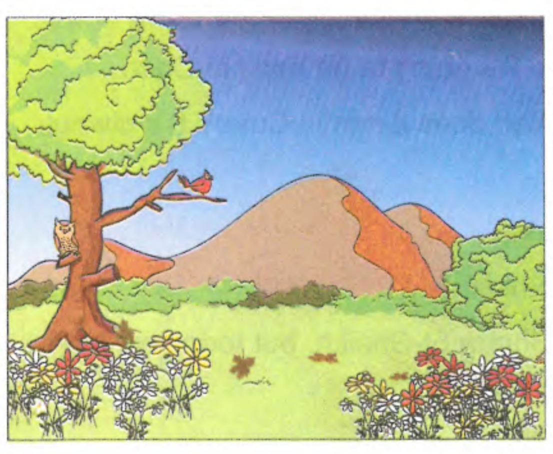
The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.



Arabic Meaning

١- تنوع
٢- جاف
٣- درجات الحرارة
٤- هام
٥- ثمان مرات

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important[4] for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times[5] more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We have a nice .... of weather.
   a degree b variety c climate d day
2. The winters are .... in Egypt.
   a hotter b colder c cooler d nicer
3. There's a very special .... in the desert.
   a climate b rain c cloud d night
4. Alexandria has around .... times more rain than Cairo.
   a eighteen b eight c eighty d nine

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When the air is strong, it's always .... (الغربية - إدارة زفتى (2024))
   a rainy b windy c sunny d cloudy
2. The weather is .... It's very hot. (قنا - إدارة قنا (2024))
   a windy b sunny c rainy d cloudy
3. It is usually cold and .... during winter. (القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024))
   a rainy b hot c sunny d dry
4. We have .... summers in Egypt.
   a hot b rain c cold d high
5. Now the temperature in Cairo is 27 ....
   a degrees b grades c times d marks
6. It's very .... at night in the desert.
   a cold b small c sunny d rain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - news - stay - rainy - storm

It's cold today, so I can't go to school. I'm listening to the ❶ .... about the weather. It's going to be ❷ .... in Cairo. There's a ❸ .... in Luxor. People in Luxor will ❹ .... at home. In Alexandria, it's going to be windy.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the **Nile** is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's only 25 mm of rain in ....
   a Cairo b London c Alexandria d England
2. The underlined word "**Nile**" is a ....
   a lake b river c sea d pond

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How much does it rain in London per year? ....
4. Why is the Nile important in Egypt? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - like - weather - the - What ? .... الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس (2024)
2. tomorrow - will - It - be - sunny - very. ....
3. it - How often - rain - does - Cairo - in? ....
4. climate - The - special - a very - desert - has. ....
5. windy - Alexandria - is - sometimes - It - in. ....
6. of - weather - We - variety - a nice - have. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what about Alexandria ....
2. it's going to be rainy in Cairo ....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The desert

Guiding phrases

special climate - hot day

....

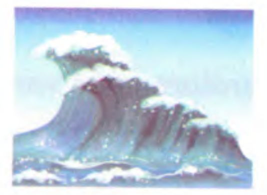
....

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ The weather

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


tornado
إعصار


tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر


strong winds / storm
رياح قوية / عاصفة

Extreme weather
الطقس القاسي


sandstorm عاصفة رملية




heat wave موجة حارة


flood فيضان

Other words كلمات أخرى

cry	صرخة	shade	ظل
nearby	قريب	past	مارًا بـ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
knock	يطرق الباب	knocked
stay	يبقى	stayed
reply	يرد	replied
pass	يتخطى	passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
become	يصبح	became
feel	يشعر	felt
know	يعرف	knew
fall	يقع	fell
lie	يرقد	lay



Unit 6 What's the weather like?



Definitions تعريفات

A heat wave: It's when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything.

Study the following

1. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high.
 - الموجة الحارة تحدث عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بدرجة كبيرة.
2. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.
 - لقد مكثنا فى الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.
3. We came back on the shady side of the street.
 - عدنا من الجانب الذى به ظل فى الشارع.
4. The very hot summer became a heat wave.
 - أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة.
5. Mom made lemonade to cool us down.
 - أعدت الأم عصير ليمون لتنعشنا.
6. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s.
 - السيدة سهير هي سيدة عطوفة في السبعينات من عمرها.
7. We didn't know what to do.
 - لم نكن نعرف ماذا نفعل.
8. We went to the store.
 - ذهبنا إلى المتجر.

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب :

flood - heat wave - sandstorm - strong winds / storm - tidal wave - tornado

1. 
tornado

2. 
----

3. 
----

4. 
----

5. -------------

6. 
----

2 Read Talia's story. What did she and her friend do?

اقرأ قصة تاليا. ماذا فعلت هي وصديقتها؟



استمع إلى النص:

My heat wave[1] story

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade[2] and tried to drink lots of water.

Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store[3] to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down[4]. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side[5] of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry[6]. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s[7] and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open[8], so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!'

We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby[9]. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

Arabic Meaning

١- موجة حارة
٢- ظل
٣- متجر
٤- تنعشنا
٥- الجانب الذى به ظل
٦- صرخة
٧- فى السبعينات من عمرها
٨- مفتوح قليلاً
٩- بالجوار

3 Read again, and put the sentences in the correct order:

اقرأ مرة أخرى، ثم ضع الجمل فى الترتيب الصحيح:

a. It was a very hot day. [1]

b. Talia's mom asked them to go to the store. [ ]

c. Mrs Sohair was lying on the floor. [ ]

d. Mr Monib and the girls helped Mrs Sohair. [ ]

e. They were on the street and heard a cry. [ ]

f. Talia and Lamia stayed in the shade at home. [ ]

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The hottest day in Egypt was 51.1° in Aswan.

أكثر يوم حرارة في مصر كانت درجة الحرارة ٥١,١ درجة في أسوان.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Yesterday, the weather was too ....
   a cold b hot c windy d cloudy
2. People walked in the .... of the trees.
   a shade b leaves c wood d branches
3. My .... told me not to go out in that day.
   a sister b mother c father d grandpa
4. The .... was 43 degrees.
   a temperature b wind c sandstorm d flood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a .... (أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط (2024))
   a tornado b heat wave c flood d sandstorm
2. When it is hot, we stay in the ....
   a desert b shade c sun d roof
3. In hot weather, we make lemonade to .... us down.
   a cold b cool c hot d rain
4. Yesterday, it was very .... It was 44 degrees.
   a cold b hot c cool d flood
5. A .... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a tornado b flood c heat wave d wind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cool - shady - fell - temperature - store

One day, there was a heat wave in our city. The ❶ .... goes very high. We went outside to buy grapes, watermelons, and lemons to make lemonade to ❷ .... us down. It was very hot. When we went to the ❸ ...., we stood on the ❹ .... side of the street.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط (2024)

It was very hot yesterday. There was a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed at home the whole day. We tried to drink lots of water and juice. Our mom made lemonade to cool us down. Our father asked us to close all the windows. Finally, we opened the windows at night when it was cool outside. It was a hard day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was a very .... day.
   a) cold b) rainy c) hot d) windy
2. We opened the .... at night when it was cool outside.
   a) windows b) doors c) fridges d) cars

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is a heat wave? ....
4. Why did their mother make lemonade? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. store - We - went - to - the. ....
2. was - It – hot - very - a - day. ....
3. didn't - to - We - know - do - what. ....
4. kind - is - Mrs Sohair - a - lady - very. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. we came back on the shady side ....
2. what is the heat wave ....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A sandstorm

Guiding phrases

- went to the pyramids
- shut the windows

....

....

Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ Language focus



Study the following

1. We always eat shawerma on Friday. — نحن دائمًا نأكل شاورما يوم الجمعة.
2. We sometimes wake up before 7 am. — نستيقظ أحيانًا قبل السابعة صباحًا.
3. Ola is never tired after work. — علا لم تكن متعبة ابدًا بعد العمل.
4. I always speak English in my English class. — اتحدث دائمًا اللغة الإنجليزية فى حصة اللغة الإنجليزية.
5. I usually have a sandwich for lunch. — أتناول عادة ساندوتش للغداء.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع ⟶ (inf.)

He - She - It - اسم مفرد ⟶ (inf.) + s / es / ies

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

◉ تُستَخْدَم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادةً بعد (verb to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي:

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانًا	أبدًا

- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays. (قبل فعل الجملة الأساسي)
- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.

◉ أو تأتي بعد verb to be كما يلي:

- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.
- It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh.

How often? كم عدد المرات؟

◉ تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often < do → I - you - we - they / does → he - she - it } + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you play football?
- I always play football.
- How often does he play football?
- He never plays football.

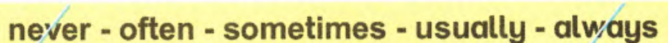
Verbs and nouns أفعال تأتى مع أسماء

have a shower	يستحم	play video games	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
get up late	يستيقظ متأخرًا	make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
eat shawerma	يأكل الشاورما	speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية
eat strawberries	يأكل فراولة	do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلى

1 Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check:

اكتب الكلمات في المربع في المكان الصحيح. استمع وتحقق:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



never - often - sometimes - usually - always

100 %	80 %	70 %	50 %	0 %
always	-------	-------	-------	never

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل (كما بالمثال):

1. speak English - I - always - English class - in my.
   I always speak English in my English class.
2. meat - She - red - eats - never. ------------------------------
3. football - plays - He - with his friends - sometimes. ------------------------------
4. wake up - We - before 7 am - sometimes. ------------------------------
5. have - I - usually - a sandwich for lunch. ------------------------------
6. Ola - work - never - is - after - tired. ------------------------------



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Faten does a lot of activities every __________ .

a month   b day   c year   d season

2. Faten always __________ breakfast with her family.

a cooks   b eats   c makes   d buys

3. Faten __________ eats meat.

a never   b always   c sometimes   d often

4. Faten often plays __________ in the club.

a football   b basketball   c tennis   d squash

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I usually have a __________ for lunch.

a sandwich   b football   c book   d pen

2. How often do you __________ books?

a drive   b play   c eat   d read

3. Mona usually __________ a shower at 8 am.

a does   b has   c makes   d speaks

4. I never eat red __________.

a homework   b games   c meat   d English

5. __________ often do you play video games?

a What   b How   c When   d Where

6. Ayman usually wakes __________ before 6 am.

a with   b at   c on   d up

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. tired - Amal - after - is - work - never.

---

2. have - I - usually - a sandwich - dinner - for. (الغربية - إدارة المحلة (2024))

---

3. eat - always - on - shawerma - We - Friday.

---

4. wake up - We - before - sometimes - 7 am.

---

5. you - How often - visit - do - grandparents - your?

---

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It .... (never is) snowing in Cairo.
2. I .... (always am) in bed at 11 p.m.
3. I .... (always) play tennis. I can't play it.
4. How often .... (do) he visit his grandpa?
5. I .... (visits always) my grandparents on Saturdays.
6. We always .... (speaks) English in English class.
7. **A:** How .... (never) do you read books? **B:** I always read books.
8. Hany never goes to school late. He .... (never) goes to school early.
9. She doesn't like dessert. She .... (always) eats it.
10. **A:** How .... (many) does he play video games? **B:** He never plays video games.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

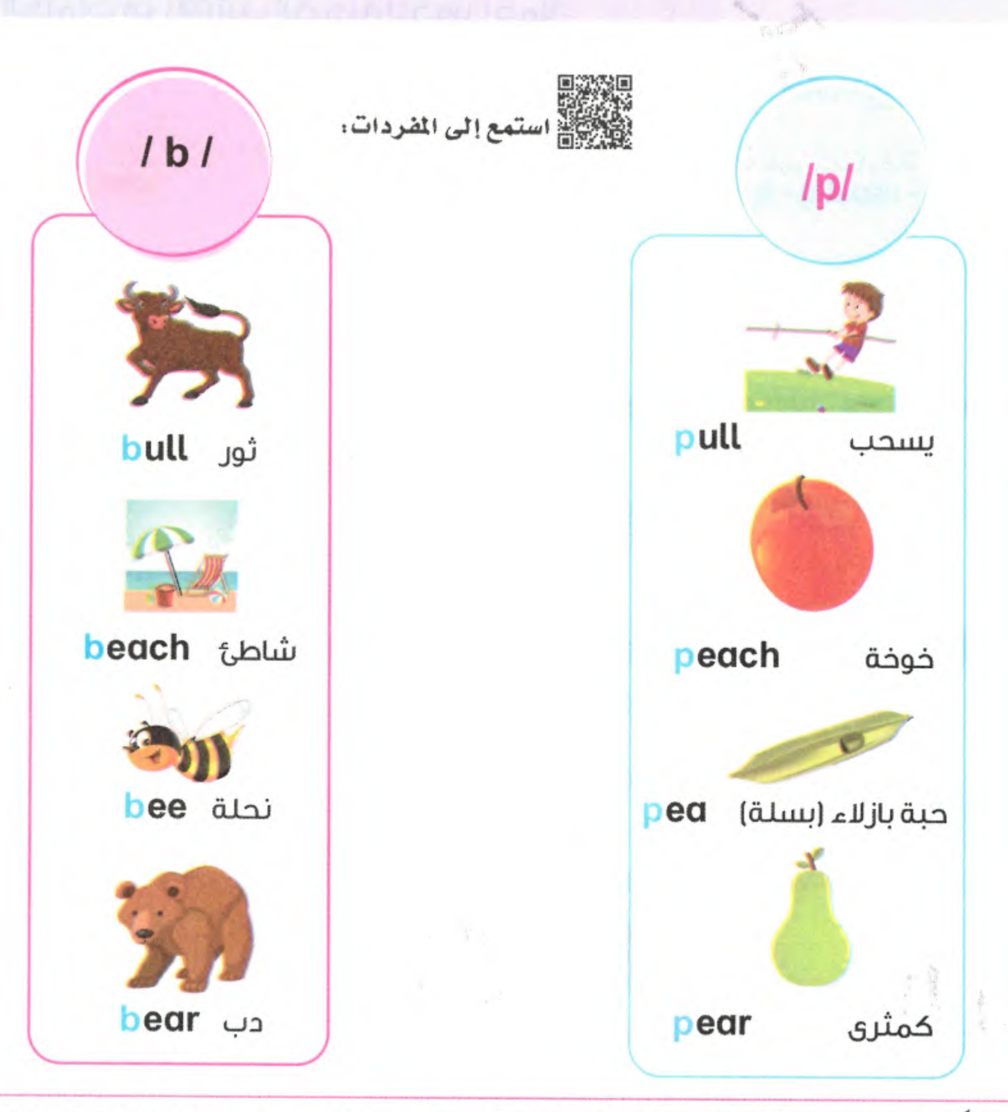
1. how often do you go to the park

---

2. i always help my mom and dad

Lesson 3 ★ Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



يصدر كلاً من الصوتين /b/ و /p/ من نفس المنطقة في مقدمة الفم عن طريق الضغط بالشفتين على بعضهما البعض. لكنهما مختلفين جدا حيث أن الصوت /p/ لا يحدث اهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية أثناء نطقه ويسمى (unvoiced) ويخرج هواء باندفاع من الفم عند نطقه ، أما الصوت /b/ فإنه يُحدث اهتزازاً في الأحبال الصوتية (voiced) مع عدم خروج هواء من الفم أثناء النطق حيث يشبه حرف (ب) في اللغة العربية.

وللتمييز بين النطقين يمكنك إحضار قطعة من الورق وتثبيتها أمام فمك ومحاولة نطق الصوت /p/ تلاحظ اهتزاز الورقة بسبب الهواء الخارج من الفم أثناء نطق الصوت وعند محاولة نطق الصوت /b/ تلاحظ عدم اهتزاز الورقة نتيجة لعدم خروج هواء من الفم.



Silent letters
الحروف الصامتة في اللغة الإنجليزية

- هناك بعض الكلمات في اللغة الإنجليزية تحتوي على بعض الحروف غير المنطوقة (الصامتة) تسمى Silent letters ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:

- لا تنطق حرف (b) إذا جاء قبله حرف (m) ⟵ lamb
- لا تنطق حرف (g) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ⟵ sign
- لا تنطق حرف (w) إذا جاء بعده حرف (r) ⟵ write
- لا تنطق حرف (k) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ⟵ know
- لا تنطق حرف (t) إذا جاء بعده حرف (l) ⟵ castle

- لاحظ الحرف المحدد فى كل كلمة غير منطوق (صامت):

island جزيرة

wrist معصم

climb يتسلق

sign إشارة / لافتة

lamb حمل / خروف صغير

knife سكينة

answer إجابة

hour ساعة

knee ركبة

two الرقم ٢

write يكتب

castle قلعة

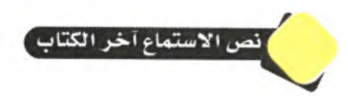
1 Circle the words that start with 'b' in red. Circle the words that start with 'p' in green. Then look and match:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'b' باللون الأحمر والكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'p' باللون الأخضر. ثم انظر وصل:



2 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen and repeat:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي سمعتها. ثم استمع وردد:



1- bee / pea	2- bull / pull	3- bear / pear
4- beach / peach	5- bee / pea	6- bull / pull
7- bear / pear	8- beach / peach	



3 Look, read, and listen. What happens to the letters in bold in the words?

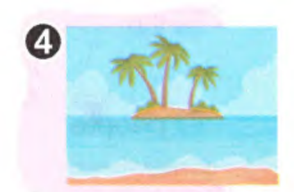
انظر واقرأ واستمع ماذا يحدث للأحرف المكتوبة بخط ثقيل في الكلمات؟

❶ 

❷ 

❸ 

climb	two	hour

❹ 

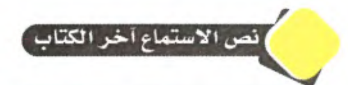
❺ 

❻ 

island	knife	write

4 Listen and write. Then read aloud:

استمع واكتب ثم اقرأ بصوت عالي :



He was 1 .... on an 2 .... with his 3 .... cats. He fell(1) onto a beach and hurt(2) his 4 ....

But he was very lucky(3) – he had a 5 .... so he could make a bandage(4) and then 6 .... a message(5) in the sand.

Two 7 .... later, people came to save(6) him!

Arabic Meaning

١- سقط
٢- جرح
٣- محظوظ
٤- ضمادة
٥- رسالة
٦- ينقذ



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My family went to the beach last __________ .
   a year b week c month d holiday
2. My sister Hala hurt her __________ .
   a arm b wrist c leg d foot
3. My father put __________ on Hala's leg.
   a a bandage b a knife c a sign d ice
4. My __________ came to see my sister's leg.
   a uncle b aunt c teacher d people

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A pea is __________
   a white b green c red d blue
2. We can get honey from __________ .
   a bees b birds c bears d peas
3. A __________ is my favorite fruit.
   a beach b carrot c bull d peach
4. The boy fell onto the beach and hurt his __________
   a wrist b island c castle d peach
5. In summer, I go to Alexandria to walk on the __________ .
   a bull b beach c peach d moon

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. could - He - bandage - make - a. ______________________________
2. onto - fell - He - beach - a. ______________________________
3. came - People - save - to - him. ______________________________

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. he was lucky ______________________________
2. which city has most rain, Gamal ______________________________

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lessons 4 & 5 Writing & Project

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

unsafe	غير آمن	torch	كشاف
power cut	انقطاع التيار		

Other words كلمات أخرى

extreme weather	طقس قاسي	extreme heat	الحرارة الشديدة
classmates	زملاء دراسة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
get dark	يحل الظلام	lightning	برق
frightening	مُخيف	electric wires	الأسلاك الكهربائية
black cloud	سحابة سوداء	candle	شمعة
wide	كبير / عريض / واسع	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
bits	قطع صغيرة	closer	أقرب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
move	يتحرك	moved
twist	يلف	twisted
contact	يوصل	contacted
damage	يدمر / يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stand	يقف	stood
find out	يكتشف	found out
strike	يصعق	struck
hurt	يؤذي	hurt

Study the following

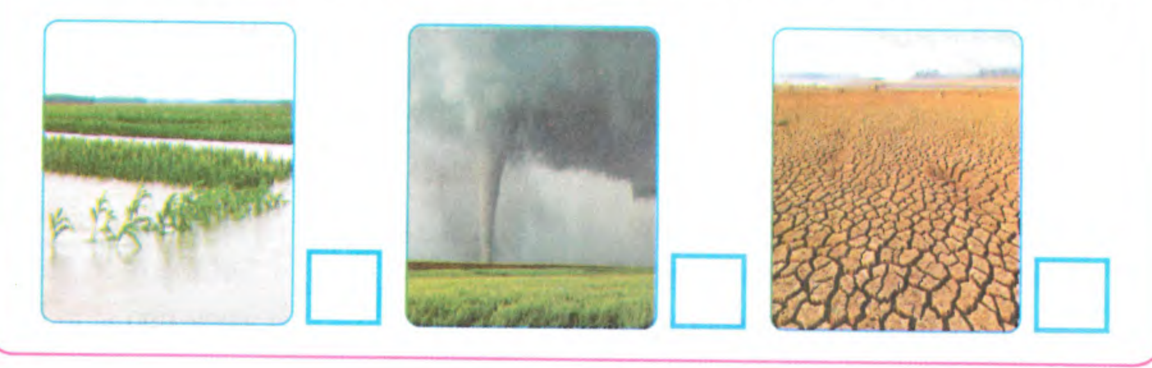
1. I was at school with my classmates. – كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي في الفصل.
2. Then it started to get dark. – ثم بدأت تظلم.
3. There might be very strong winds. – قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جدًا.
4. There might be heavy rain and lightning. – قد يكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.
5. It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.
   – قد لا يكون الخروج آمن – يمكن أن تسقط الأسلاك الكهربائية.
6. There might be a power cut. – قد يكون هناك انقطاع للتيار الكهربائى.
7. People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.
   – قد يحتاج الأشخاص فى الشارع أو المنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتكم.
8. Stay inside and keep dry. – حاول أن تكون بالداخل وأن تبقى بعيدًا عن المياه.
9. What might happen in a storm? – ماذا يمكن أن يحدث فى العاصفة؟
10. Make sure you have candles and torches. – تأكد أن عندك شمع وكشافات.
11. Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.
    – اتصل بأصدقائك وعائلتك لتتأكد أنهم فى أمان.
12. Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe.
    – لا تذهب لأى مكان بالقطار – ذلك غير أمن.
13. Help anyone who is afraid. – ساعد أى شخص خائف.
14. Don't stand near trees in case lightning strikes.
    – لا تقف بالقرب من الاشجار فى حالة صعقة البرق.
15. Don't stand near wires - they could fall and give you an electric shock.
    – لا تقف بالقرب من الاسلاك. من الممكن أن تقع و أن تصاب بصدمة كهربائية.



1 Read. What extreme weather in England is the writer describing. Check (✓) the correct photo below?

اقرأ. ما هو الطقس القاسي في إنجلترا الذي يصفه الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the .... and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.



2 Read another account of an extreme weather event. The words in bold are wrong. Can you correct them?

اقرأ بياناً آخراً لحدث طقس قاسي. الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل خطأ. هل يمكن أن تصححها؟

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I **loked** out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there **were** a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to **sea**. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There **was** other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see **some** more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the **son** again and drove on through the desert!

3 Read the tips for keeping safe in extreme weather. Match them to the correct group. One tip matches both groups

إقرأ الأرشادات للحفاظ على الأمان فى الجو القاسى. صل الأرشادات بالمجموعة الصحيحة. يمكن أن تصل نصيحة واحدة بالمجموعتين.

a Keeping safe in extreme heat: --

b Keeping safe in a sandstorm: --

1- Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.

اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.

2- Wear a scarf to protect your face.

ارتدي وشاح لحماية وجهك.

3- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning.

حاول قضاء الوقت في المباني الباردة التي بها تكييف الهواء.

4- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth.

ابق في الداخل حتى لا يدخل الرمل في فمك.

5- Open the windows when there's a cool wind.

افتح النوافذ عندما تكون الرياح باردة.

6- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.

لا تخرج. إذا توجب عليك الذهاب بالخارج، ابق في الظل.

7- Eat small, light meals.

تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.

8- If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.

إذا كنت تقود السيارة، فحاول الوصول إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك.

9- If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.

إذا كنت في المنزل، فتأكد من إغلاق النوافذ حتى لا تدخل الرمال.

10- Wear light, cool clothing.

ارتدِ ملابس فاتحة اللون وخفيفة.

11- Cover your head and face as much as possible.

غطي رأسك ووجهك قدر الإمكان.

12- Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

قم بإيقاف تشغيل التكييف لمنع دخول الرمال.

4 Read and do: اقرأ وافعل :

How to keep safe in a storm

What might happen in a storm?

- There might be very strong winds.
- There might be heavy rain and lightning.
- It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.
- There might be a power cut.
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.





How can you protect yourself?

- Stay inside and keep dry.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut.
- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.
- Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe.
- Help anyone who is afraid.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.
- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... anyone who is afraid.

   a Help b Let c Leave d Annoy

2. We can use .... when there is a power cut.

   a trains b buses c trees d torches

3. Turn .... the air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

   a on b of c off d out

4. You should contact your friends and family to check that they are ....

   a lazy b safe c save d afraid

5. To keep safe in a sandstorm, you should wear a scarf to protect your ....

   a leg b hand c foot d face

6. Open the windows when there's a .... wind.

   a hot b cool c dark d black

7. We mustn't stand near trees when lightning ....

   a strikes b stops c checks d protects

8. In a sandstorm, ... the windows, so no sand can get in.

   a move b shut c open d destroy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

frightening - destroy - weather - dark - winds

Yesterday, I was in the garden with my friends. The 1 .... was bad. First, it started to get 2 .... There were very strong 3 .... It was very 4 .... We went back home in my father's car.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a scientist. Last week, he drove to the desert with his friend Ali to find out new desert animals. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car, but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. It was good because they did not hit them. Suddenly, the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His father went to the desert by ....

   a bus   b train   c ear   d bike

2. His father is a/an ....

   a scientist   b engineer   c doctor   d teacher

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the father go to the desert?

   ....

4. What did they see through the window?

   ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. might - There - cut - be - a power.

   ....

2. dry - Stay - and - inside - keep.

   ....

3. What - in - happen - storm - might - a?

   ....

4. clothing - Wear - cool - light.

   ....

5. might - strong - There - be - very - winds.

   ....

6. moved - the - Suddenly - away - standstorm.

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**Helping**) anyone who is afraid.
2. There .... (**was**) some cars on the road.
3. There .... (**were**) a lot of sand in the desert.
4. How can you .... (**protected**) yourself in a storm?
5. My family and I .... (**was**) driving through the desert at 5 p.m.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how can you protect yourself, Mona

....

2. hany and nabil help anyone who is afraid

....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

How to keep safe in a storm

Guiding questions

1- What might happen in a storm?

2- How can you protect yourself?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review

The weather


cloud
سحابة


cloudy
ملبد بالغيوم


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر


wind
رياح


windy
عاصف (شديد الرياح)


sunny
مشمس

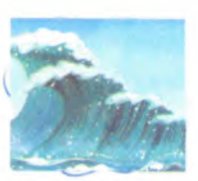

snow
جليد


ice
ثلج


rainbow
قوس قزح

Extreme weather


tornado
إعصار


tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر


strong winds
رياح قوية


sandstorm
عاصفة رملية


heat wave
موجة حارة


flood
فيضان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

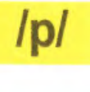
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	believed
call	ينادى	called
rain	تمطر	rained
stay	يبقى	stayed
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
twist	يلف	twisted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
fall down	يسقط	fell down
get up	ينهض	got up
hear	يستمع	heard
feel	يشعر	felt
stand	يقف	stood
strike	يصعق	struck

Pronunciation




pull يسحب


peach خوخة


pea
حبة بازلاء (بسلة)


pear كمثرى

/ b /


bull ثور


beach شاطئ

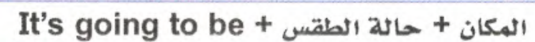

bee نحلة


bear دب

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



نستخدم:



- It's **going to be** hot in Egypt.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع ⟶ (inf.)
He - She - It - اسم مفرد ⟶ (inf.) s / es / ies

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

تُستَخْدَم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادةً بعد (verb to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي:

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانًا	أبدًا

- I **always go** to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I'**m always** in bed at 11 pm.

2 How often? كم عدد المرات؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often < do ⟶ I - you - we - they / does ⟶ he - she - it } + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you **play** football?
- I always **play** football.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

The desert

1 The desert has a very special climate. It has very hot days and very cold nights. Some people live in the desert. These people try to keep cool in the day and warm at night. The desert is a very interesting place.

Lesson 2

A sandstorm

2 Last week, there was a sandstorm. My family and I went to the Pyramids by car. While we were on the road, there was a sandstorm. My father told me to shut the windows of the car. My father couldn't see the road. The sand was everywhere. When the storm went away, we arrived at the Pyramids late.

Lessons 4&5

How to keep safe in a storm

3 You should stay inside and keep dry in a storm. Contact your friends and family to check they are safe. Don't go anywhere by car. Help anyone who is afraid.

Activity - Unit 6

Hot summers

4 We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. In summer we go to Alexandria. It is cool in summer in Alexandria. We enjoy playing on the beach. We enjoy swimming in the sea. It's a fantastic city.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Egypt is very ---------- in summer. (cold - rainy - hot)
2. The ---------- goes very high. (lightning - temperature - wind)
3. Most people go to the ---------- in summer. (beach - school - bank)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

classmates - yesterday - school - did

A : Where did you go ----------?

B : I was at ----------.

A : What ---------- you do there?

B : I met my ----------.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, I was driving through the desert to visit my uncle. He has a big house near Al Fayoum. I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm on the road. It was very dangerous. I closed all the windows. It was very dark. There was a lot of sand in the air.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Why were you driving through the desert? ----------
2. What was in the air? ----------

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. I saw a ---------- in the desert.

a sandstorm b camel c truck

4. I looked out of the ....

ⓐ door ⓑ window ⓒ balcony

5. I closed all the ....

ⓐ doors ⓑ boxes ⓒ windows

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There might be a power ....

ⓐ shade ⓑ cloud ⓒ cut

2. Don't .... near wires.

ⓐ stands ⓑ stand ⓒ standing

3. The .... is my favorite fruit.

ⓐ pear ⓑ bull ⓒ pear

4. A heat wave is when the temperature goes ....

ⓐ small ⓑ high ⓒ low

5. I always .... to the club on Saturday.

ⓐ go ⓑ goes ⓒ going

E- Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. my - Yesterday, - went - outside - family.

....

2. never - I'm - after - tired - work.

....

3. didn't - cars - We - on - see - the road.

....

4. does - it - How often - in - summer - rain?

....

5. hot - There - summers - Egypt - in - are.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I was .... when I heard about the heat wave.

a happy   b excited   c afraid   d amazed

2. I was worried about my ....

a grandpa   b grandma   c parents   d friends

3. I bought some lemons from the ....

a market   b store   c supermarket   d garden

4. I made .... for my grandma.

a orange juice   b tea   c lemonade   d cake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's very .... in the summer in Egypt.

a cold   b cloudy   c hot   d high

2. When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a ....

a sandstorm   b flood   c heat wave   d tornado

3. Don't stand near .... in a storm.

a friends   b wires   c school   d station

4. Wear light cool clothing in a ....

a winds   b heat wave   c heavy rain   d tidal wave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

power - dark - outside - heavy - frightening

I was at school with my classmates. It started to get ❶ .... We went ❷ .... Then, I saw a storm and it was ❸ .... There were dark clouds. It started to rain. It was a ❹ .... rain.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice weather in Egypt. My favorite season is spring. The weather is often warm. The trees become brown and we can see flowers and baby animals. At the weekend, I go to the park and fly my kite. In spring. I wear a jacket in the evening. It sometimes rains, but not for long. In spring we can play a lot of games. We can play football, tennis and other ball games. الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة (2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....

   a water b pollution c weather d sports

2. In the evening I wear ....

   a jeans b shorts c a jacket d a scarf

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's your favorite season? ....
4. Where do you go at the weekend? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. can - How - yourself - protect - you? ....
2. have - of - a nice - We - variety - weather. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Noha .... (never is) tired after work.
2. Emad always .... (wake) up before 8 am.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

yasser doesn't play in the street ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Hot summers

Guiding questions

1- How is the weather in hot summers? 2- What do you wear in hot summers?

....

....

Review 2



Objectives of Review 2

أهداف المراجعة الثانية

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Lesson 2: Writing and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To learn about a famous writer in Ancient Greece.

- يتعلم الطلاب عن كاتب مشهور في اليونان القديمة.

Lesson 3: Term 1 project

- To learn about climate change and how it affects Egypt.

- يتعلم الطلاب عن تغير المناخ و مدى تأثيره علي مصر.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 4 , 5 & 6

1 Listen and point: استمع و اشر:


Tapescript نص الاستماع


استمع إلى النص:

1- waterfall	2- journalist	3- sneakers
4- lake	5- rainbow	6- cloudy
7- dentist	8- mountain	9- snow
10- scientist	11- island	12- ice
13- river	14- grasshopper	15- forest

Start


1- ....


2- ....


3- ....


6- ....


5- ....


4- ....


7- ....


8- ....


9- ....


12- ....



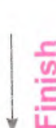
11- ....

10- ....


13- ....


14- ....


15- ....



Finish

2 Check (✓) the correct past continuous sentences and correct the wrong sentences:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام الجمل في زمن الماضي المستمر وصحح الجمل الخاطئة:

1. He were doing his homework with his mom yesterday. ✗
   He was doing his homework with his mom yesterday.
2. She was have breakfast at 8 am. ✗
   She was having breakfast at 8 am .
3. I was speaking English at 5 pm. ✓
   ....
4. They were makeing paper kites yesterday. ☐
   ....
5. We were swiming in the sea in the evening. ☐
   ....
6. You were talking to your friends and watching TV. ☐
   ....

3 Match the people to the tools for their jobs. Then complete the sentences with must or mustn't :

صل الأشخاص بالأدوات الخاصة بوظائفهم ، ثم اكمل الجمل باستخدام must أو mustn't:

1 2 3 4 5 6

a b c d e f

1. I ....must.... get up early to look after my animals.
2. I ....mustn't.... be unkind when I interview people.
3. I .... give time to each of my sick people.
4. I .... finish the lesson half an hour early to catch my train.
5. I .... prepare delicious food for all the guests.
6. I .... drive too fast – it's dangerous.

Lesson 2 ★ Units 4 , 5 & 6

Key vocabulary

a famous writer	كاتب مشهور	path	طريق
Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة	traveler	مسافر
moral	درس أخلاقي	shine	تسطع الشمس
(be) called	تسمي	pull tighter	يضيق الملابس
fables	أساطير خرافية	blow	ينفخ
patient	صبور	take off	يخلع



Study the following

1. **Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece.**

- كان أيسوب كاتبًا مشهورًا فى اليونان القديمة.

2. **He wrote stories called "fables"- they always had a moral.**

- كتب قصص عن أساطير خرافية وكان دائمًا بها درس اخلاقى.

3. **A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people.**

- الدرس الأخلاقى يعلمنا العطف ومساعدة الأخرين.

4. **The North wind was trying to make the Sun angry.**

- حاولت الرياح الشمالية أن تغضب الشمس.

5. **He pulled his coat tighter around him.** - لقد ارتدى معطفه بإحكام حول نفسه.

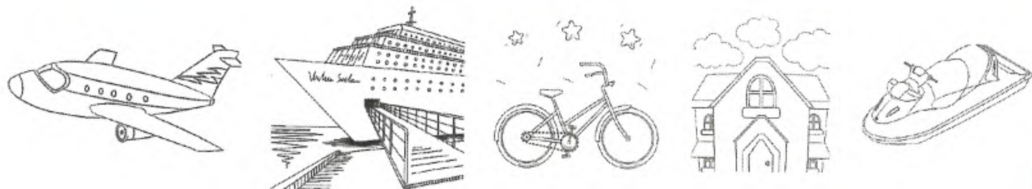
6. **The North wind was angry and blew away.** - كانت الرياح الشمالية غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا.

7. **Be kind and patient with people.** - كن عطوفًا وصبورًا مع الناس.

Review 2

1 Think about eco-tourism again. Remember that eco-tourism is about being kind to the environment and local people. Color the things which eco-tourism is in yellow and the things which it isn't in red

فكر في السياحة البيئية مرة أخرى. تذكر السياحة البيئية هي أن تكون عطوفا على البيئة والسكان.
لون الأشياء التي تخص البيئة باللون الأصفر والأشياء التي لا تخص البيئة باللون الأحمر.




استمع إلى النص



Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.

2 Read and listen to one of Aesop's fables. Choose the moral a, b, or c:

اقرأ واستمع إلى واحدة من أساطير إيسوب ثم اختر:

a Listen to the person who is against you and don't do things.

b Always wear a coat, even when it's sunny.

c Sometimes you can get people to do things by being clever, not by being strong.


استمع إلى النص

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said.

The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

3 Read again and put the events in the story in the correct order.

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى ورتب احداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح:

1. The North Wind is not nice to the Sun. [1]
2. The Sun wins the competition. [ ]
3. The Sun tries to make the man take his coat off. [ ]
4. The Sun suggests a competition. [ ]
5. The North Wind tries to make the man take his coat off. [ ]
6. The Sun sees a man on the path. [ ]

4 Listen and write the words you hear. Then match:

استمع واكتب الكلمات ثم صل:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

1- strawberry	2- throw	3- street	4- three	5- strong
6- screen	7- eye	8- town	9- boy	10- loud

a

1- s..............................

2- t..............................

b

c

3- s..............................

4- t..............................

d

e

5- s..............................

6- s..............................

f

g

7- e..............................

8- t..............................

h

i

9- b..............................

10- l..............................

j

Lesson 3 ★ TERM 1 - PROJECT 1

Key vocabulary

climate change	تغير المناخ	evaporate	يتبخر
affect	يؤثر على	rise	ترتفع
glacier melting	انصهار الجليد	sea levels	مستويات البحر
drought	جفاف	less crops	محاصيل أقل
flood	فيضان	melt	ينصهر
agriculture	الزراعة	salty	مالح
save	يوفر	soil-less farming	الزراعة بدون تربة
solution	حل	specific greenhouse	صوبة زجاجية خاصة
temperature	درجة الحرارة		



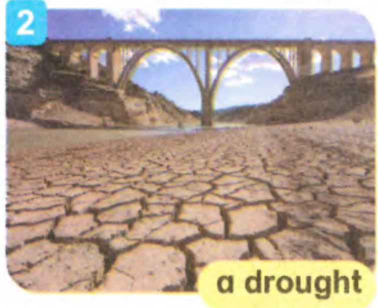
Study the following

1. Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution.
   - التغير المناخي هو تغير الطقس بسبب التلوث.
2. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting.
   - ترتفع درجة الحرارة وينصهر الجليد.
3. When the sea gets higher, we get floods.
   - عندما يرتفع البحر يحدث الفيضان.
4. When the temperature rises, we get drought because the water evaporates.
   - عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.
5. Climate change might cause problems to agriculture.
   - تغير المناخ يسبب مشاكل في الزراعة.
6. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses.
   - تأخذ المحاصيل كمية مناسبة من الماء والعناصر الغذائية في صوبات زجاجية خاصة.

1 Climate change and how it affects Egypt. What is climate change?

تغير المناخ وكيفية تأثيره على مصر. ما هو تغير المناخ؟


1 This is a glacier melting


2 a drought


3 a flood

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

2 Think about some possible solutions. Look at the example:

فكر في حلول ممكنة . انظر إلى هذا المثال:

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil.
Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.


soil-less agriculture in Egypt

3 COP27 is a very important international environmental meeting. People from many countries talk about how to help the environment and stop climate change. This year it will be in Sharm El-Sheikh. Think about what you and your group want to say to COP27 about Egypt and the world

COP27 اجتماع عالمى هام جدًا عن البيئة. يتحدث الكثير من الناس في الدول الأخرى عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة وتوقف تغير المناخ سيعقد هذا العام فى شرم الشيخ فكر أنت ومجموعتك فيما تقوله إلى COP27 عن مصر والعالم.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with ....

a tornado b pollution c flood d tidal wave

2. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are ....

a staying b changing c melting d covering

3. When the sea gets ...., we get floods.

a lower b higher c smaller d wider

4. When the temperature rises, we get a ....

a drought b tornado c flood d storm

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Seham must .... up the kitchen.

a tidy b get c work d destroy

2. Amir .... friends with other people in his community.

a grew b blew c made d did

3. A : How .... do you do karate? B : I never do it.

a old b often c long d high

4. My mom .... the meat with a sharp knife yesterday.

a cut b swam c heard d met

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

office - games - scare - programmer - keen

Hi! My name's Mona. I want to be a computer ❶ .... when I grow up. I'm not ❷ .... on being outside, so I want an ❸ .... job. I love playing computer ❹ .... I also really enjoy solving problems.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I read a book about life in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians were very successful. **They** built the pyramids and a lot of temples. There were many jobs. For example, farmers, scribes and craftsmen. Farmers grew many crops, grains, vegetables and fruit. Craftsmen made beautiful paintings and sculptures. Scribes learnt hieroglyphs. They used hieroglyphs to write on the walls of their temples.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about the .... in Ancient Egypt.

   a colors   b jobs   c clothes   d houses

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to the ....

   a pyramids   b paintings   c Ancient Egyptians   d temples

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the farmers grow in Ancient Egypt? ....

4. Where did scribes use hieroglyphs in the Ancient Egypt? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - People - Egypt - worked - hard - Ancient. ....

2. was - English - I - speaking - 5 pm - at. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What were you .... (**study**) at 7 pm yesterday?

2. We .... (**must to**) prepare the baby's food.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

it started to get dark ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Elephantine Island

Guiding phrases

in Aswan - most fantastic place

....

....

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب المدرسى

LET'S REMEMBER

Narrator : **Let's remember, Lesson 1, Exercise 2. Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words:**

Speaker : **Social media**

cell phone password
do research text message

Transportation

metro boat taxi tram

Environment

pollution drought traffic flood



Unit 1

LESSON 3 

Narrator : **Unit 1, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Look and write:**

Narrator : 1 **Speaker :** cake
Narrator : 2 **Speaker :** lime
Narrator : 3 **Speaker :** bean
Narrator : 4 **Speaker :** grape
Narrator : 5 **Speaker :** egg
Narrator : 6 **Speaker :** milk
Narrator : 7 **Speaker :** rice
Narrator : 8 **Speaker :** candy

Narrator : **Unit 1, Lesson 3, Exercise 3. Read. Then listen and complete:**

Narrator : 1 **Speaker :** I say, "Let's play!"
Narrator : 2 **Speaker :** Let's bake a cake
Narrator : 3 **Speaker :** Snails have tails.

Unit 2

LESSON 3

Narrator: **Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 2, Listen and check (✓) the words with long vowel sounds:**

cry - fuel - make - cone - cube - feet

Unit 4

LESSON 3 

Narrator : **Unit 4, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Listen and write. Then listen and repeat:**

Speaker : The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

Unit 6

LESSON 2 

Narrator: **Unit 6, Lesson 2, Exercise 1. Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check:**

usually - often - sometimes

LESSON 3 

Narrator: **Unit 6, Lesson 3, Exercise 2. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen and repeat.**

Narrator: 1 **Speaker:** pea
Narrator: 2 **Speaker:** pull
Narrator: 3 **Speaker:** bear
Narrator: 4 **Speaker:** peach
Narrator: 5 **Speaker:** bee
Narrator: 6 **Speaker:** bull
Narrator: 7 **Speaker:** pear
Narrator: 8 **Speaker:** beach

LESSON 4

Narrator : **Unit 6, Lesson 3, Exercise 4. Listen and write. Then read aloud:**

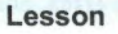
Speaker : **1-** He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky – he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات الخاصة بكتاب (Bit by Bit)



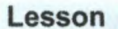
Unit 1

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle is a farmer. He grows onions and tomatoes in his field. He gets fresh eggs from chickens. He eats some eggs and sells some eggs at the market. He gets a lot of money at the market.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Today Omar's family was busy at home. They prepared breakfast in the morning. They ate ful medames, boiled eggs and bread. In the afternoon they had burger and french fries. Their mother made cake and yogurt for them in the dinner. Then, they watched TV.

Al-Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

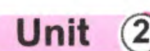
Ibrahim and his mom like going to the market to buy vegetables. Ibrahim likes healthy food. In the morning Ibrahim likes to drink milk.



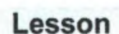
Activity - Unit 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt has many famous meals like ful medames, molokhia, koshari and basbousa. I like these meals and help my mother to cook them. We can make molokhia into soup and make basbousa with important ingredients like semolina, coconut, sugar, melted butter and yogurt. All these meals make our bodies healthy.



Unit 2

Lesson 1 Part 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I like playing sports. My favorite sport is playing football. I go to the club two times a week. I like swimming, too, but I'm better at football than swimming. My brother Sameh is good at doing karate. We go together to the same club.



Lesson 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Soha is a good girl. She's very good at making cakes. She can help her mum in the kitchen, but she is bad at washing the dishes. She's great at making shawerma.



Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite sport is football. I love this sport very much. I can play with a team. We kick the ball with our feet on the pitch. I always win the match in my team. I'm very good at it.



Lessons 4 - 5

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are famous Egyptian sportwomen like Hedaya

Malak and Rania Elwani. Let's talk about Rania Elwani. She is a famous Egyptian swimmer. She was born on October 14, 1977. She began practicing swimming at the age of six. She won many gold and bronze medals.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I go to the tennis court in the club near my house to play tennis. I take a racket and a tennis ball.

Activity - Unit 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Pollution is a dangerous problem in our world. It destroys our life. People throw garbage in lakes, rivers and seas. The polluted water kills organisms that live in the water. We should find solutions to this problem and save water.

Unit 3

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last summer, I went to Alexandria on holiday with my family. I packed my suitcases. I took my sunglasses because it was sunny. I needed my swimming shorts. I like swimming. I took three blue T-shirts, too.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt, many people wear traditional Egyptian clothes. They wear galabeyas when they're celebrating special festivals. For example, they wear them for Eid. The galabeyas have long sleeves. They also have hidden pockets. A galabeya is usually white,but some people wear galabeyas with different colors.

Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ahmed's mother is good at making hats and T-shirts. Yesterday was a sports day, so Ahmed's mother made ten boxes of T-shirts. She gets a lot of money.

Lessons 4 - 5

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite clothes are T-shirts and shorts. I like wearing them in the summer. I also like my white cotton socks in winter. My sweater is striped. My favorite clothes are really smart.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Galabeyas are the most popular Egyptian clothing. Most men and boys wear galabeyas in Eid. Galabeyas are made from cotton. They have long sleeves.

Activity - Unit 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday, my friend Ayman went to the shops with his father. He went there to buy his school uniform. At school, the children have to wear blue shirts. Boys wear dark blue trousers. Girls wear dark blue skirts. Ayman liked his school uniform.

Review 1

Activity on Units 1, 2 & 3 

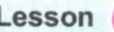
- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite recipe today is basbousa. I buy the

ingredients from the shop. Then, I mix these ingredients by hand. I bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. I make the syrup for about 10 minutes. Finally, I pour the syrup over the basbousa. It's a delicious dessert.



Unit 4

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Adel. I live in Alexandria. It's a big city in the north of Egypt. Alexandria has beautiful beaches. Alexandria Library is a good place to read books. Many people come to Alexandria in the summer. I like my city very much because its people are friendly.



Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hala's birthday was yesterday. Hala's mom made a nice strawberry cake. Hala's friends gave her nice presents. Hala and her friends played video games.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hani is a good boy. He does a lot of activities every day. Yesterday, Hani was sleeping at 6 am. His sister Rasha was watering the flowers in the garden.



Activity Unit 4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My cousin Sara went to Elephantine Island with her family last weekend. It's the most amazing place in Aswan. She visited the Aswan museum to see the old things. After that, she went on a boat trip on the island.



Unit 5



Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ancient Egyptian women played a very important role in Ancient Egypt. They worked at home and could work outside. They cooked meals and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets and make sandals. They could sell them at the market.



Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Walid is a zoo keeper. Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth.



Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Tamer. I have a big house. My house has a big garden. There is a fence around the garden. I water the plants every day. I plant vegetable seeds in the garden.

Al-Azhar Test

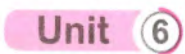
- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Magdy is a zoo keeper. Magdy looks after lions. Magdy gives water and food to animals. Water is important for animals.

Activity - Unit 

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Farming was very important in Ancient Egypt. The farmers worked very hard. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They grew many crops like grains, vegetables and fruit.



Unit 6



Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt we have a nice variety of weather. Egypt has very hot summers. The winters are cooler. There's a very special climate in the desert. It doesn't often rain in Cairo. Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.

Lesson 2 Part 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday was hot and sunny. I stayed home. The weather was too hot. People walked in the shade of the trees in the street. My mother told me not to go out in that day. The temperature was 43 degrees. No one could do anything.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My cousin Faten does a lot of activities every day. She always eats breakfast with her family. She never eats meat. She often plays tennis in the club.

Lesson 

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Mohamed. My family went to the beach last year. I played on the beach. My sister Hala hurt her leg. She fell on her leg. My father put a bandage on it. My uncle came to see my sister's leg. She was very lucky.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Egypt is very hot in summer. The temperature goes very high. Most people go the beach to enjoy the nice weather.

Activity - Unit 

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I was afraid when I heard about the heat wave. I was worried about my grandma. I bought some lemons from the store. I made lemonade for my grandma.

Review 2

Activity on Units 4, 5 & 6 

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises these days, we get droughts because the water evaporates.





PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

ملحق
تسميع المفردات
والواجب المنزلي

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول
2025

5th
PRIMARY FIVE
FIRST TERM

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Unit 1 We plant our food



Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

دجاج	شيكولاته ....
موز	ليمون أصفر ....
مكسرات	ليمون أخضر ....
كعك محلي	جوز الهند ....
بطيخ	بصل ....
مانجو	أناناس ....
كشري	فول ....
أرز	جزر ....
طماطم	بيض ....
بطاطس	صحى ....
سوق	غير صحى ....
طازج	مفضل ....
عسل	سهل ....
مربى	شاورما ....
حديقة	مهلبية ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يأتي	....	يفرغ	....
يشتري	....	يزور	....
يفكر	....	يبيع	....
يأكل	....	يجمع	....
يحب	....	يزرع / ينمو	....
يملك	....	يحتاج	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We grow .... in our garden. القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)

   a eggs b limes c chickens d chocolate

2. We buy and sell things at the .... المنوفية - إدارة منوف (2024)

   a market b school c zoo d hotel

3. It is .... to eat a lot of chocolate. الدقهلية - إدارة أجا (2024)

   a useful b unhealthy c healthy d good

4. .... about buying some lemons?

   a When b Where c How d Who

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

little - delicious - many - much - children

I love eating chocolate. Most ❶ .... like to buy it. But eating too ❷ .... is unhealthy. You should eat a ❸.......................... . It's ❹ ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. buy - We - rice - bread - and - need to.

----

2. have - any - you - Do - , please - carrots?

----

3. would - I - to have - mahalabia - like - coconut.

----

4. favorite - Tarek's - healthy - is - fish - food.

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about ____________ (eat) some carrots?
2. Would you ____________ (likes) an apple?
3. I would like ____________ (any) rice, please. قنا - إدارة قنا (2024)
4. There's ____________ (a) bread in the kitchen. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس (2024)
5. It's raining. I'm carrying an ____________ (umbrellas) .
6. Let's ____________ (buying) some tomatoes.
7. Are there any ____________ (orange) in the market?





Vocabulary

ملوخية ....

زبد ....

بسبوسة ....

وصفة طعام ....

سميد ....

زبادى ....

مكونات الطعام ....

سكر ....

شراب (سائل محلى) ....

ملعقة طعام ....

حساء عدس ....

لوز ....

ساق الفاصوليا ....

عملاق ....

قلعة ....

قفص ....

باليد ....

طاسة ....

دقيق ....

فرن ....

سكين ....

شكل ماسى (معين) ....

عصير ليمون ....

مسحوق الخبز ....

Adjectives

سحر / سحرى	حر / طليق ....
فظيع	فقير ....
عطوف	غنى ....
ذهبى	خاص / مميز ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينتزع	....	يتسلق	....
يخلط	....	يعد	....
يقطع	....	يصرخ	....
يسقط	....	ينقذ	....
يبيع	....	يحصل علي	....
يقابل	....	يزن	....
يشغل	....	يضيف	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a very big person.

a castle b giant c cloud d cage

2. We can .... the ingredients by hand.

a meet　b save　c mix　d boil

3. Most animals have ....

a cakes　b eggs　c snakes　d tails

4. We pour the .... over the basbousa.

a syrup　b tea　c oil　d soup

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

On Fridays, Mariam and her mother go shopping. They have everything ready in the shopping list. Mariam wants pineapple juice. Mom wants to buy two kilos of rice, a kilo of sugar and three kilos of mangoes. Also, mom wants some tomatoes and onions. She needs some eggs and cheese for breakfast. Then, they come back home on foot.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Mariam wants .... juice.

a mango　b pineapple　c orange　d apple

2. Mom needs some eggs and cheese for ....

a lunch　b breakfast　c dinner　d snack

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When do Mariam and her mom go shopping? ....

4. How many kilos of mangoes does mom buy? ....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

let's bake some cakes

....

Unit 2 I want to be healthy

Lessons 

Vocabulary

كرة القدم	الهواء ....
الكاراتية	انبعاثات ....
السباحة	التنفس ....
كرة اليد	صوبة زراعية ....
الإبحار	كابوس ....
رياضة الكونج فو	ظل ....
التنس	تنس الطاولة ....
الاسكواش	فريق ....
نادى	لعبة التايكوندو ....
مباراة	شطرنج ....

Adjectives

سام	نائم ....
خطير	فظيع ....

قذر / متسخ	مفزع ....
عظيم	مفضل ....
أفضل فى	رائع / مذهل ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتسلق	....	يعد (طعام)	....
يمشي	....	يرسم	....
يقفز	....	يفوز	....
يمارس	....	يلعب	....
يرتب	....	يشاهد	....
يجرب	....	يتنفس	....



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

emissions - greenhouse - toxic - dangerous - breathing

Our city has a problem. People can't breathe because the air is ❶ .... There are too many ❷ .... from cars. I can't go to school, the air is too bad. This is ❸ .... for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. My sister went to the hospital yesterday. She had problems with her ❹ ....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. good at - doing - My - math - brother - is.

 ----

2. helping - They're - great at - mom - their.

 ----

3. karate - and - My - tennis - favorites - are.

 ----

4. sport - are - What - great at - you?

 ----

5. is - a popular - in - Football - Egypt - sport.

 ----

6. are - good - Why - you - squash - at?

 ----

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My cousin plays karate .... (**but**) basketball.
2. I think tennis is .... (**bad**) than football.
3. Hoda is great at .... (**draw**) pictures. الغربية - إدارة زفتى (2024)
4. I don't eat fish, ... (**and**) I like meat.
5. My mom is good at .... (**make**) pizza.
6. Emad is good .... (**on**) playing chess.





Vocabulary

كرة التنس ....

بطل ....

لاعب رياضي ....

ميدالية ....

سيره ذاتية ....

منافس / خصم ....

المسطحات المائية ....

تلوث ....

الكائنات الحية ....

شخص رياضي ....

جائزة ....

مياة الصرف ....

ملعب كرة القدم ....

ملعب كرة التنس ....

حمام السباحة ....

تدريب ....

حذاء كرة القدم ....

بدلة الكارتية ....

مضارب الاسكواش ....

نظارة السباحة ....

مواد كيميائية ....

المياة الجارية ....

الحياة البرية ....

احتياجات خاصة ....

Adjectives

ضار	مذهل ....
عطوف	هام / مهم ....
شيق	ناجح ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يسبب	....	يتجنب ....
....	يقتل	....	يدمر ....
....	يركل	....	يتنافس ....
....	يرمى	....	يخسر ....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak was __________ on April, 21, 1993.

   a bear   b born   c became   d burn

2. Raja Garmash could win the bronze __________ .

   a athlete   b competitor   c medal   d game

3. Polluted water __________ wildlife in rivers.

   a destroy   b throw   c carry   d cause

4. Dirty water make children and people ....

a wet b well c ill d healthy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

team - swimming - court - club - sports

My name's Soha. I like playing ❶ .... I go to the ❷ .... with my mother. I'm very good at ❸ .... I win many medals and now I'm in the school ❹ .... But I'm very bad at tennis. I never win.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. take - shorter - You - showers - should.

....

2. sneakers - We - play - football - wear - to.

....

3. bought - a karate - Ayman - yesterday - suit.

....

4. throw - Never - garbage - a beach - in.

....

5. tennis - We - in - courts - have - the park.

....

6. play - your - Where - do - favorite - sport - you?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what does hedaya want for the future?

....

October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Laila likes .... very much.
   a tennis b handball c basketball d football
2. Laila practices basketball in the ....
   a market b club c park d school
3. Laila can .... the ball into the basket.
   a kick b climb c throw d jump
4. She wins the match with her .... against the other team.
   a cousins b sisters c children d friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... is my favorite dessert.
   a Koshari b Fish c Mahalabia d Shawerma
2. A nightmare is a .... dream.
   a good b happy c bad d clean
3. My uncle .... fresh eggs every day.
   a collects b grows c saves d turns
4. Bake the basbousa in the .... for 30 minutes.
   a oven b cupboard c glass d shower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

favorite - goggles - well - rackets - person

I like swimming very much. It's my ❶ .... sport. I wear my swimming ❷ .... I can swim ❸.................. . For me, it's the best thing. I feel like a different ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went to the club with my father to play a sport. My father asked me which sport I liked most. I chose taekwondo. My favorite taekwondo player is

Hedaya Malak. When I grow up, I want to be like Hedaya. She is a great player. She won many medals. **She** is also kind and helpful. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. I went to the ---------- with my father.
   a club b market c shop d match
2. Raja could win the ---------- medal.
   a bronze b silver c gold d glass

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**she**" refer to? ----------------------------
4. Why is Hedaya Malak kind and helpful? ----------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. kicks - best - I - high - like. ----------------------------
2. as - much - Save - water - possible - as. ----------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda is great at ------------ (plays) tennis.
2. I'm good at football, ------------ (and) I'm bad at handball.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

hedaya is a very kind person ----------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Water pollution

Guiding questions

1- What causes water pollution?
2- How can we solve this problem?

October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. My favorite sport is __________.
   a squash b karate c taekwondo d tennis
2. I practiced karate at the age of __________.
   a seven b four c six d five
3. I wear a white __________ to do karate.
   a coat b T-shirt c suit d dress
4. I practice hard to win __________.
   a rackets b medals c chess d goggles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need __________ to make fresh juice.
   a cookies b pineapples c nuts d bread
2. __________ the mixture into a baking dish.
   a Kick b Grow c Kill d Pour
3. __________ water destroy wildlife in rivers.
   a Clean b Healthy c Polluted d Fresh
4. We need swimming __________ in the pool.
   a goggles b rackets c trousers d sneakers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

collects - gives - market - juice - favorite

My grandpa has a mango tree in his garden. This mango tree is very big. It ❶ .... him a lot of mangoes. He sells some of them at the ❷ .... He gets a lot of money. He takes some of mangoes to make ❸.......................... . It's his ❹ .... fruit.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hoda. I'm in grade five. I always **get up** at six o'clock. I have boiled eggs and bread. My sister likes to have yogurt and fruit salad. My parents like to have

ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burgers, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Hoda's parents like to have .... for breakfast.
   a full medames b fruit salad c boiled eggs d burgers
2. The underlined phrase "**get up**" means ....
   a go up b wake up c come up d climb up

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hoda go in the afternoon? ....
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. would - you - What - like - eat - to? ....
2. dangerous - for - children's - Emissions - lungs - are. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

سوهاج - إدارة إخميم (2024)

1. Are there any .... (lemon) in the bag?
2. Kareem is good at .... (climb) mountains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i love watching football matches ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite dessert

Guiding questions

1- What's your favorite dessert?

2- How do you make it?

....

....

....

Unit 3 How do I look?

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

- منقط ....
- مخطط ....
- أكمام ....
- حزام ....
- تاج ....
- زى خاص ....
- قفازات (جوانتي) ....
- رداء / ثوب (روب) ....
- مركز تسوق (مول) ....
- جيوب ....
- ملابس مصرية ....
- رحلة قصيرة ....
- شنطة سفر ....

- نظارة شمس ....
- شورت سباحة (مايوه) ....
- بلوفر ....
- كوفية (شال) ....
- تى شيرت ....
- عقد ....
- جلابية ....
- بيجامة ....
- حذاء رياضى ....
- بالطو ....
- مهرجان / احتفال ....
- ذهب / ذهبى ....
- شكل / نمط ....

Adjectives

مميز / خاص	تقليدى ....
شعبى / محبوب	خفى / غير ظاهر ....
مصاب بحروق الشمس	كثير الالون / زاهى الالون ....
شيق / مثير	متشوق - متحمس ....
محبوب	رائع / بارد ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحتاج	....	يأخذ	....
يتذكر	....	يرتدى	....
يُعبى (شنط سفر)	....	يعطى	....
يحتفل	....	يعرف	....
يخبى	....	يحمى	....
يستعير / يسلف	....	يسافر	....
يصاب بـ	....	يشترى	....
ينام	....	يغادر	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Did you .... your suitcases for the holiday?
   a pack b wear c visit d give
2. I need my .... because it's sunny.
   a sweaters b necklaces c belts d sunglasses
3. She's wearing a crown on her ....
   a neck b head c leg d face
4. Noha wears her sunglasses to .... her eyes.
   a take b write c protect d borrow

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - do - know - **What** - to - want?

....

2. about - my - **How** - galabeya - best?

....

3. took - her - umbrella - **Fatma** - spotted.

....

4. last - on - **I** - holiday - was - summer.

....

5. did - **Why** - make - suit - Samy - a new?

....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Will I .... (**needs**) my scarf?
2. We .... (**go**) to the shopping mall yesterday.
3. It will .... (**being**) sunny tomorrow.
4. Can you .... (**giving**) me some information?
5. Laila bought a new dress to .... (**wore**) in her party.
6. Gamal and Yasser .... (**are**) pack their suitcase tomorrow.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do you usually wear ....





Vocabulary

- احتفالات
- أعياد
- كتان
- الوان زاهية
- الخامة
- المقاس
- العمر
- فاتح / باهت
- غامق
- فضة
- ذهب
- نقود
- جلد مدبوغ
- ورشة
- صانع أحذية
- جنى صغير (جن)
- كافى
- زى مدرسى
- رابطة عنق (كرافتة)
- بنطلون
- جوارب (شراب)
- جاكيت
- صديرى
- قبعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)
- جيبة
- زوج من (أحذية مثلا)
- وجبة
- يوم رياضى

Adjectives

مدهش / رائع	طيب ....
سعيد	أمين ....
جديد	فقير ....
صغير / قليل	جميل ....
أنيق	لذيذ ....
مُتعب	مندهش ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يدفع (مالا)	....	يومن / يعتقد	....
يكتشف	....	يرقص	....
يترك / يغادر	....	يشكر	....
يختبى	....	يصف	....
يقص	....	يجرب / يقيس	....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In my school, girls have to wear gray ---------- .
   a rackets b skirts c goggles d jigsaws
2. It's very hot today. I have to wear a ---------- .
   a jacket b coat c T-shirt d sweater
3. The shoemaker ---------- hard, but he had no money.
   a worked b hid c left d found
4. Girls in Mexico are wearing ---------- Mexican dresses.
   a amazed b traditional c delicious d surprised

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cotton - wearing - gloves - stripes - comfortable

My favorite clothes are pajamas. I like ❶ .... them in the summer. They are ❷ .... They are made from ❸.......................... . I like the pajamas with the ❹ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Abdallah. I live in Qena. I'm in primary 5. I go to El-Shrouk Primary School. At school, I wear dark blue trousers and a pale blue shirt. The girls in my school also wear a blue uniform. In the summer, it's usually hot in Qena. I usually wear shorts and T-shirts. Many men wear galabeyas in Qena. I usually go to the park to play football because I'm good at playing football. My brother Omar is good at tennis, but he is bad at football.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. In Qena, many men wear the __________ .

a shorts   b skirts   c uniform   d galabeya

2. Omar is good at __________ .

a football   b tennis   c karate   d handball

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's Abdallah good at? ______________________________
4. What do girls wear in Abdallah's school? ______________________________

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. try - these - Can - sneakers - I - new? ______________________________
2. got - a dark - I've - sweater - red. ______________________________
3. bright - Mexican - love - colors - girls. ______________________________
4. is - a white - Hoda - skirt - checked - wearing. ______________________________
5. cut - to - make - The - leather - shoemaker - shoes. ______________________________

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ____________ (tidy) my room yesterday.
2. Did the shoemaker's wife ____________ (made) the shoes?
3. I'm wearing ____________ (leather - new) shoes.
4. We ____________ (has) to wear a tie every day.
5. Ayman bought a ____________ (cotton - black) suit.

Unit 4 Looking after our world

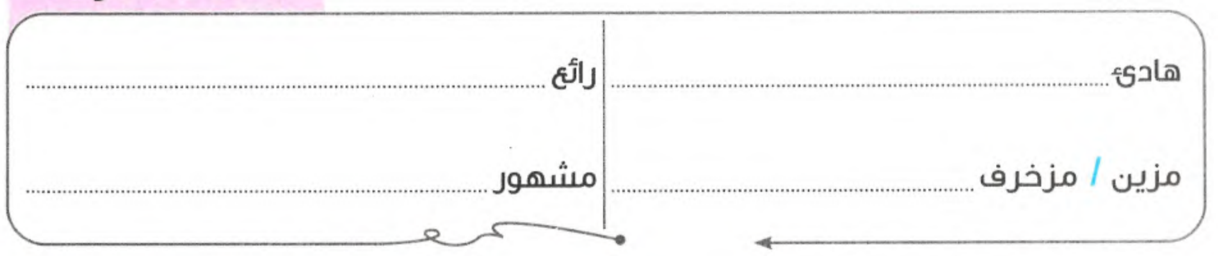
Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

نتيجة (تقويم)	غابة ....
تاريخ	معبد فيلة ....
رحلة قصيرة	شعاب مرجانية ....
مركب شراعى	غروب الشمس ....
زيارة	مقابر النبلاء ....
تمشية	مدينة كبيرة ....
ملئ بـ	نادر ....
مدينة صغيرة	فترة حكم ....
شكل	يصل إلى المدرسة ....
جبل	يسبح فى البحر ....
بحيرة	يتناول طعام الغداء ....
شلال	يستيقظ ....
جزيرة	حديقة النباتات بأسوان ....

Adjectives



هادئ	رائع ....
مزين / مزخرف	مشهور ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفتقد شخص	....	يفهم	....
يحاول	....	يجد	....
يسير (يمشى)	....	يذهب	....



Activities Lessons 1&2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

oldest - smallest - Museum - city - Island

Last week, I visited my cousin in Aswan. It's a beautiful ❶ .... I went by train and my cousin took me in his car. Then, we visited the Elephantine ❷ .... It's the ❸ .... part of Aswan. Then, we went to the Aswan ❹ .... and saw old things.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. go - We - for - can - walks - long.

----

2. Mona - Was - English - at - studying - 7 pm?

----

3. see - the sunset - I - from - can - a felucca.

----

4. Nagwa - have - Did - trip - a good?

----

5. swimming - Were - in - the fish - the lake?

----

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was .... (**cleaned**) my bedroom.
2. Was Noha .... (**listen**) to music?
3. It's the .... (**more**) fantastic place.
4. While I .... (**watch**) TV, my father came.
5. I was traveling by boat when I .... (**see**) the island.
6. What .... (**was**) you doing yesterday morning?
7. Nabil .... (**didn't**) playing tennis at six yesterday.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you visit the museum

----

2. there are beautiful villages near Aswan





Vocabulary

الحياة البرية	شارع ....
التلوث	منتجع بيئى ....
السكان المحليون	نزل بيئى ....
رحلة طويلة	السياحة البيئة ....
ثقافة / حضارة	سائح بيئى ....
أماكن تاريخية	الشعاب المرجانية ....
مريح	البيئة ....
مدينة الغردقة	فندق ....
مسمار قلاووظ (بورمة)	مشروع ....
يخدش (يخربش)	مقدم برامج ....
شاشة	مرشد سياحى ....
يصرخ	واحات ....
ثمرة فراولة	مميزات ....
قوى	عيوب ....
عرش	حلقوم (حلق) ....

يرمى / يلقي	لؤلؤ ....
الغطس	السير لمسافات طويلة ....
وادى	إقامة المعسكرات (التخييم) ....

Adjectives

ودود	ممتاز ....
لطيف	مبهر / خلاب ....
أساسى / رئيسى	رائع ....
نادر	تام / كامل ....
صديق للبيئة	مستدير ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يخلق / ينشئ	....	يدفع (مالا)	....
يتلف / يدمر	....	يفهم	....
يتعلق بـ	....	يتعلم	....
يحفظ	....	يستنتج	....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

huts - local - project - environment - damage

Hi! My name's Sally. I'm doing a school ❶ .... about eco-tourism in Egypt. Eco-tourism looks after the ❷ .... and helps ❸.......................... people. Eco-tourists stay in small local ❹ .... or pay to stay in people's houses.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. damages - the - Tourism - environment.

   ----

2. coral - There - in - reefs - the Red Sea - are.

   ----

3. his - sat - king - on - The - throne. القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)

   ----

4. fantastic - wildlife - in - There - are - Taba.

   ----

5. are - in - The - fascinating - buildings - Taba.

   ----

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brother and I .... (was) swimming in the sea. كفر الشيخ - إدارة شربين (2024)
2. Laila wasn't .... (have) lunch at 3 p.m yesterday.
3. .... (Does) Adel washing his car when it rained?
4. I .... (don't) having a great time yesterday evening.
5. When my father .... (comes) , I was studying math.

November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I'll help my mother to .... our suitcases.
   a carry b pack c wash d close
2. I'll take my swimming shorts and ....
   a sunglasses b dresses c T-shirts d socks
3. Emad will take his ....
   a sweaters b sneakers c sunglasses d pajamas
4. My mother will need her dresses because they are ....
   a excited b comfortable c striped d interesting

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This shoemaker works in a big ....
   a workshop b hospital c bank d school
2. We're .... English at 8 pm yesterday.
   a having b studying c arriving d getting
3. I got some cardboard paper to make ....
   a posters b clothes c sunglasses d salads
4. There's no traffic in Aswan, so it's very ....
   a quiet b noisy c ugly d dirty

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

local - wildlife - looks - pay - dive

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It ❶ .... after the environment and helps ❷ .... people. Eco-tourists like to learn about local ❸.........., projects and local culture. They stay in small hotels or ❹ .... to stay in people's houses.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Rasha and Noha are good sisters. They always help their mother at home. They go shopping with **her** every week. Last week, they went to the shopping mall to

buy clothes. Noha bought a red spotted dress and a yellow hat. Rasha bought a silver necklace and a checked skirt. They bought black sunglasses for their father because his birthday will be tomorrow. They went back home by bus at five.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The girls went to the shopping mall last ---------- .

a week b day c year d month

2. Noha bought a red ---------- dress.

a checked b spotted c striped d sleeved

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**her**" refer to? --------------------

4. Why did the girls buy sunglasses for their father? --------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a great - Taba - holiday - is - for - good. --------------------

2. shoes - made - Who - every - new - night? --------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I bought gloves to ---------- (**keeps**) me warm.

2. While Amr ---------- (**sleeps**), his father came.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

alexandria is a big city --------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your visit to the Elephantine Island

Guiding phrases

- in Aswan
- traveling by boat

November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Hatem lives in a / an .... in Aswan.
   a museum   b village   c garden   d island
2. Every .... Hatem rides a felucca.
   a Monday   b Tuesday   c Sunday   d Wednesday
3. Hatem can see lots of .... in the Aswan Museum.
   a plants   b statues   c paintings   d pictures
4. Aswan Botanical .... is amazing.
   a Temple   b Garden   c Island   d River

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tourists like diving in the Red Sea near coral ....
   a beefs   b reefs   c bells   d leaves
2. Let's sit in the .... of this tree.
   a shore   b shelf   c shirt   d shade
3. Toxic means that something is very .... to eat.
   a good   b delicious   c bad   d high
4. There are hidden .... in galabeyas.
   a pockets   b sleeves   c vests   d ties

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rare - wildlife - hiking - pollution - valleys

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, ❶ .... and camping. You can find ❷ .... , mountains, desert and the sea there. You can enjoy fantastic ❸ .... , like the Nubian ibex and ❹ .... birds.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a poor shoemaker. One day, he slept after he bought some leather at the market because he was tired. When he woke up, he found

a very pretty pair of shoes on his table. He sold them and bought some food and more leather. The next morning, he found three elves making another pair of shoes. He thanked **them** and his wife gave them food and clothes. They made more and more. Everyone bought shoes from the shoemaker. He lived happily ever after.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The shoemaker was ----------.

a sick   b poor   c bad   d angry

2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the ----------.

a shoes   b elves   c leather   d market

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many elves did the shoemaker find? ------------------------

4. What did the wife give to the elves? ------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. looks - to - It - really - wear - cool. ------------------------

2. the tombs - of - We - the Nobles - to - walked. ------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Ayman was ---------- (wash) the dishes.

2. They won't ---------- (took) their sneakers.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the princess wore a beautiful crown ------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

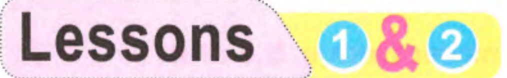
Traditional Egyptian clothes

Guiding questions

1- Why do people wear traditional clothes?

2- When do people wear them?

Unit 5 Jobs we do





Vocabulary

تاجر	رمل ....
حرفيين	يتأكد ....
خباز	تماثيل ....
صياد	حبوب ....
طبيب	الكتابة الهيروغليفية ....
مصر القديمة	كاتب (عند الفراعنة ....
ملكة	مجوهرات ....
معبد	سجلات ....
قمح	فلاحين ....
محاصيل	حرفيين ....
رموز / علامات	بذور الكتان ....
صندل	الملكة الحاكمة ....
صفوف	دواء ....
أعمدة	دخل / إيرادات ....
صخور	مدرسة أو كلية لتعليم الطب ....
كابوريا	غابة ممطرة ....
ضوء الشمس	شمام ....

النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة	النظام البيئي الصحراوى ....
النظام البيئي البحرى	النظام البيئي للبحيرات الصخرية ....
سكين حاد	مناطق ....
صلة / علاقة	زبون ....
رئيس عمال	مصدر ....
مدير	حارس حديقة الحيوان ....

Adjectives

قديم	ناجح ....
طبي	كثير الألوان ....
مختلف	غالي الثمن ....
متصل	طبيعي ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتصل	....	يصنع	....
يبقى حيًا	....	يعطي	....
يعمل	....	يعتني بـ	....
يصبح	....	يقضي (وقت)	....
يزرع	....	ينسج	....
يتكون من	....	يخبز	....



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

meals - outside - care - weave - flax

Women in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They worked at home and ❶ .... They cooked ❷ .... cleaned the house and took ❸ .... of their children. Women could ❹ .... baskets, bake bread and make sandals.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - sharp - I - a - knife. -
2. looks - A zoo - animals - keeper - after. -
3. wake - her - Manal - up - must - brother. -
4. had - a job - in - Everyone - Egypt - Ancient. -
5. hieroglyphs - Scribes - years - spent - learning - many. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I - - - - - - - - - - - - (visit sometimes) my friend, Hisham.
2. You - - - - - - - - - - - - (must to) get up early.
3. Does Tarek - - - - - - - - - - - - (plays) tennis?
4. They - - - - - - - - - - - - (never are) ready to work.
5. Mona and Sally - - - - - - - - - - - - (drives) to work at 7 am.
6. You mustn't - - - - - - - - - - - - (eating) in the classroom.
7. Mona doesn't eat fish. She - - - - - - - - - - - - (always) eats it.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i must do my arabic homework

- -





Vocabulary

مسترخي	جرادة ....
حقل	فراشة ....
حديقة	فصل الخريف ....
يستمتع بوقته	فصل الربيع ....
عازف بيانو	فصل الشتاء ....
عالم	عالم أحياء ....
طبيب أسنان	صحفي ....
مبرمج كمبيوتر	موظف استقبال ....
يحل مشاكل	طبيب بيطري ....
تجربة في المعمل	عملية جراحية ....
العمل الجماعي	وظيفة داخل مكتب ....
زملاء الفريق	يكون صداقات ....
حفل موسيقى	يخيف ....
في الخارج (خارج المباني)	سور ....

Adjectives

نظيف	كسول ....
متسخ	غريب ....
مجروح / مصاب	جوعان ....
حريص على	رائع ....
ممتلئ بـ	مندهش ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستمر / يواصل	....	يقضي وقت	....
يجهز	....	تشرق الشمس	....
يتجاهل	....	يفهم	....
يرد	....	يكتشف	....
يحصد	....	يسمع	....
يحل مشكلة	....	يكتب	....
يفضل	....	يمرض	....
يفوز	....	يحضر	....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I work with animals. I'm a ....
   a) baker b) scribe c) doctor d) vet
2. A .... likes music.
   a) journalist b) pianist c) scientist d) boiologist
3. She doesn't like work. She's ....
   a) lazy b) clever c) healthy d) lovely
4. Our garden is .... of flowers.
   a) fall b) full c) fell d) feel
5. I'm not keen .... being outside.
   a) with b) for c) on d) at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fun - money - harvest - think - important

We must work hard all our life. We (1) .... about the future, not just today. It's fine to have (2) ...., but it's very (3)........... to work hard. We can get (4) .... and food when we work.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. work - the - in - I - concert - school.

   ....

2. work - out - We - best - solutions - the.

   ....

3. traveling - long - I - distances - like.

   ....

4. must - be - The - room - operation - clean.

   ....

5. cousin - is - My - programmer - computer - a.

   ....

6. a football - by - You - yourself - can't - match - win.

   ....

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

قوس قزح ....

عاصفه ....

مناخ خاص ....

درجة الحرارة ....

ظل ....

متنوع ....

دافئ ....

يحافظ على برودته ....

عاصفة رملية ....

فيضان ....

موجة حارة ....

أخبار ....

سحابة ....

ملبد بالغيوم ....

مطر ....

ممطر ....

رياح ....

مشمس ....

جليد ....

إعصار ....

موجه المد و الجزر ....

رياح قوية ....

صرخه ....

طبيعى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعتقد / يصدق	....	يأتي	....
يسأل	....	يسقط	....
ينادي	....	ينهض	....
تمطر	....	يستمع	....
يجري	....	يرد	....
يطرق الباب	....	يتخطى	....
يبقى	....	يشعر	....
يحضر	....	يرقد	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... do you visit your grandpa?
   a many b old c often d much
2. I always .... dinner for my family.
   a do b make c play d speak
3. We stay in the ...., when it's hot.
   a shade b door c shelf d roof
4. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very ....
   a slow b high c small d fast
5. There's sand everywhere. It's a ....
   a heat wave b tornado c flood d sandstorm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

never - video - usually - homework - shower

Friday is a holiday. I ❶ .... wake up at 9 am. I take a ❷ .... I sometimes have breakfast with my family. Then, I often play ❸ .... games. I ❹ .... go outside on Friday. I prefer to stay home.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. going - to be - It's - tomorrow - cloudy.

   ----

2. Egypt - our - cooler - In - winters - are. سوهاج - إدارة أخميم (2024)

   ----

3. green - is - Which - very - city?

   ----

4. often - does - How - Alexandria - rain - have?

   ----

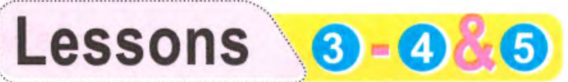
5. going - to - a sandstorm - Aswan - is - have.

   ----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It .... (be) hot and sunny last week. المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2024)
2. How often .... (does) they watch TV?
3. Soha always .... (read) English story.
4. Luxor is going to .... (has) a storm.
5. I .... (have usually) a sandwich for lunch.





Vocabulary

يحل الظلام	طقس قاسي ....
زملاء دراسة	الحرارة الشديدة ....
مُخيف	عاصفة رملية ....
واسع / عريض	برق ....
قطع صغيرة	الأسلاك الكهربائية ....
كشاف	صدمة كهربائية ....
انقطاع التيار	شمعة ....
غير آمن	سحابة سوداء ....
حبة بازلاء (بسلة)	أقرب ....
خوخه	كمثرى ....
دب	يسحب ....
سكينة	ثور ....
معصم	قلعة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يدمر	....	يقف	....
يتحرك	....	يكشف	....
يوصل	....	يصعق	....
يدمر / يتلف	....	يؤذي	....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

afraid - check - destroy - dry - inside

My friend Omar is writing about how to keep safe in a storm. He makes notes. First, you should stay ❶ .... and keep ❷ .... Contact your friends and family to ❸ .... they are safe. Help anyone who is ❹ ....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - protect - How - can - yourself?

- -

2. a scarf - Wear - your - face - on.

- -

3. hurt - many - A - people - tornado.

----

4. lots of - Drink - in - water - heat - extreme.

----

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I heard the news of the weather in Egypt on TV. There was a sandstorm in Cairo. So I decided to stay home and closed all the windows in my house.

Then, I turned off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in. My father couldn't drive his car to work. Suddenly, there was a power cut. We were lucky because we had candles and torches. Then, the sandstorm moved away and the sky was clear.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. I turned off .... to stop sand coming in.

a TV   b air-conditioning   c lights   d torches

2. When the sand moved away, the sky was ....

a black   b dark   c clear   d lucky

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

----

4. Why couldn't the father drive to work?

----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we are worried about the weather

December Test 1 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ahmed is a .... programmer.
   a TV   b tablet   c cell phone   d computer
2. When Ahmed was young, he loved computer ....
   a problems   b games   c screens   d pictures
3. Ahmed enjoys .... problems.
   a speaking   b playing   c solving   d reading
4. Ahmed works in a / an .... in a big building in Giza.
   a shop   b office   c house   d apartment

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like walking on the ....
   a beach   b peach   c pear   d bull
2. Essam never .... English.
   a stays   b speaks   c sleeps   d swims
3. Make .... your windows are shut.
   a sure   b shade   c chair   d shelf
4. Please, ... on the door before you enter.
   a feel   b know   c knock   d lie

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

achieve - work - experiment - discuss - team

Teamwork is very important and useful. We work in a team when we are doing science ❶ .... When I help my father or mother with his or her work. When you work in a team, you should help your ❷ .... When there is a problem, you should ❸ .... it together to ❹ .... out a solution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

A scribe was an important job in Ancient Egypt. A scribe learnt to read and write. He spent many hours learning hieroglyphs and it was expensive. When we go to the temples, we can see hieroglyphs on the walls. **They** also kept records and lists for important things.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is mainly about ....
   a hieroglyphs b a temple c a scribe d Ancient Egypt
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a records b walls c hours d scribes

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can we see hieroglyphs? ....
4. What did a scribe keep? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. fruit - My - is - favorite - a peach. ....
2. opened - The - at - manager - midday - the restaurant. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We always .... (ate) shawerma.
2. They .... (must to) study hard.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

It doesn t often rain cairo. ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to protect yourself in a storm

Guiding questions

1- What might happen in a storm?
2- What should you do to be safe?

....

....

....

December Test 2 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Egypt has special ....
   a rain   b climate   c river   d country
2. There's no .... in Egypt.
   a rain   b cloud   c snow   d wind
3. Alexandria has around .... times more rain than Cairo.
   a seven   b nine   c eight   d ten
4. The water from the Nile helps us to .... our crops.
   a grow   b raise   c sell   d eat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It was hot and I was .... through the desert.
   a diving   b driving   c sleeping   d knocking
2. A .... knew how to read and write well in Ancient Egypt.
   a farmer   b trader   c scribe   d baker
3. The .... are buzzing all the day.
   a cats   b ants   c bees   d grasshoppers
4. When the air is strong, it's always ....
   a cloudy   b sunny   c rainy   d windy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

injured - check - keeps - bring - mind

Mrs Noha is a vet. She ❶ .... many animals at home. She helps sick or ❷ .... animals. She works inside when people ❸ .... their animals to her. She works outside when people call her to ❹ .... on the animals in their houses or farms.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My cousins Samira and Fatma live in Aswan. Yesterday, they heard the news of the weather in Aswan. There was a heat wave. The temperature was 50°C. The girls decided to stay home. They helped their mother to buy lemons, grapes and watermelons from the nearest store to cool them down. They helped their neighbor, Mr Adel. Mr Adel is a kind man in his 60s and lives with his son. His son went to his work early. They made lemonade to Mr Adel and he thanked them.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. There was a .... in Aswan
   a sandstorm   b tornado   c heat wave   d flood
2. The girls decided to ....
   a stay home   b play   c sleep   d walk

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the girls buy from the nearest store? ....
4. Why did Mr Adel thank them? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. prefer - to be - Would - a doctor - you? ....
2. we - Make - the right - sure - food - have. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We often .... (comes) on time.
2. Islam never .... (climbing) mountains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how often do you read stories ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Keeping safe in hot summers

Guiding phrases

- going to the beach
- have cold drinks

....

....

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسى الأول

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali's favorite food is __________ .
   a mangoes b oranges c chocolate d meat
2. Chocolate is __________ .
   a healthy b good c bad d unhealthy
3. He likes chicken, fish and __________ .
   a bread b rice c salad d milk
4. Ali likes playing sports with his __________ .
   a brother b friend c sister d cousin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need to pack my clothes in the __________ to travel.
   a sunglasses b sneakers c pocket d suitcase
2. We can buy and sell things at the __________ .
   a school b library c park d market
3. Scientists think that people are causing __________ change.
   a weather b climate c temperature d greenhouse
4. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's __________ .
   a economy b scribes c skills d baskets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rich - cage - poor - giant - angry

Jack and his mother didn't have money. They were ❶ __________ . Jack saw a very big ❷ __________ . He also saw a hen in the ❸ __________ . Next to the hen were some golden eggs. Jack took the hen and sold the golden eggs. Jack became ❹ __________ at the end.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about Omar's __________.
   a school b favorite food c village d job
2. Lemon is a kind of __________.
   a candy b fruits c vegetables d nuts

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do farmers raise? ______________________________
4. What does Omar's mom make? ______________________________

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - weather - What - like - the? ______________________________
2. jobs - Tourism - people - gives - local - for. ______________________________

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about __________ (buy) some grapes?
2. We __________ (was) playing tennis at 3 pm yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how did he go to school ______________________________

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Holidays

Guiding phrases
- going to Alexandria
- playing and swimming

____

____

2 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. People in Ancient Egypt .... very hard.
   a played b sang c worked d slept
2. .... planted many crops.
   a Traders b Farmers c Craftsmen d Scribes
3. Traders traveled up and down the ....
   a Nile b sea c ocean d lake
4. Scribes knew how to read and ....
   a grow b sell c run d write

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack is very ...., he has no money.
   a rich b poor c strong d happy
2. A .... is a very bad dream.
   a smoke b museum c nightmare d sweater
3. When I play football, I wear my football ....
   a boots b racket c goggles d suit
4. A .... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a tidal wave b sandstorm c heat wave d flood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

night - animals - vet - operation - food

I'm Hany. When I'm older, I want to be a ❶ .... because I love animals. I think this is a good job for me because I like helping ❷ .... Sometimes a vet works inside. If an animal needs an ❸ ...., the room has to be very, very clean. The worst part of this job is if an animal gets sick at ❹ ...., I'll get out of bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Tourism is very important for a lot of countries. It gives local people jobs. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures. But tourism can also damage the environment. It can create too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places or monuments. People should try eco-tourism because eco-tourism looks after the environment. In Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ---------- .
   a fishing b tourism c animals d hospitals
2. Tourism can create too much ---------- .
   a oxygen b water c carbon dioxide d milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does tourism give local people? ----------------------------------
4. Why should people try eco-tourism? ----------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - squash - He - match - a - watching. ----------------------------------
2. are - people - The - friendly - local - very. ----------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What ------------ (was) they doing at ten o'clock yesterday?
2. I went to the market ------------ (buy) some vegetables.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what would you like to eat ----------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My favorite food

Guiding phrases

- fruit and vegetables
- healthy and delicious

----

3 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة طوخ التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My friends and I went to ....
   a Aswan b Cairo c Alexandria d Giza
2. We went there ....
   a yesterday b last month c today d this morning
3. We visited ....
   a the zoo b the pyramids
   c the Elephantine Island d the museum
4. It's one of the greatest .... in the River Nile.
   a islands b seas c lakes d canals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle planted an apple tree in his ....
   a office b library c room d garden
2. Camels live in the ....
   a sky b sea c desert d greenhouse
3. Dresses are types of ....
   a sports b meals c clothes d teams
4. Tourism gives .... for local people.
   a jobs b jokes c clothes d food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hot - play - green - lovely - eat

When I was young, I could go to the park . I could ❶ .... with my friends. The grass was ❷ .... and the sky was blue. It was ❸ .... to have rain after a very ❹ .... day and I enjoyed so much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family in Cairo. I will stay in my uncle's farm in the summer holiday. I will go there to see the flowers he planted in the spring. So I won't go to the beach in this summer. I like to draw, so I will buy some crayons, chalk and paper to draw a picture for what I will see because I like painting so much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed goes to his uncle's .... in summer.
   a farm   b city   c town   d shop
2. Ahmed will buy chalk and paper because he likes ....
   a writing   b reading   c drawing   d playing

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Ahmed? ....
4. Why won't Ahmed go to the beach this summer? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. There - tomatoes - aren't - any - the fridge - in. ....
2. squash - playing - I - am - at - good. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She didn't .... (finishes) her homework yesterday.
2. I like .... (play) football and basketball.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i usually get up early ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My trip to Aswan

Guiding phrases

- how to travel
- places to visit

....

....



محافظة المنوفية

إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. It's __________.
   - a summer
   - b winter
   - c fall
   - d spring
2. The bees are __________.
   - a drinking
   - b working
   - c playing
   - d buzzing
3. The ants are __________.
   - a working
   - b playing
   - c eating
   - d sleeping
4. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time __________.
   - a playing
   - b relaxing
   - c working
   - d flying

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. __________ are my favorite fruit.
   - a Pineapples
   - b Beans
   - c Eggs
   - d Onions
2. We need to look after our __________.
   - a sky
   - b dream
   - c sun
   - d planet
3. I wore a galabeya to stay __________.
   - a hungry
   - b unhappy
   - c sad
   - d cool
4. A __________ wrote everything down and kept records.
   - a scribe
   - b doctor
   - c craftsman
   - d farmer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

flying - sandwiches - football - plays - watch

My uncle Samy takes his family to the park every Friday. There, he ❶ __________ with his children. They play ❷ __________.The mother makes a lot of ❸ __________. They have lunch and eat ice cream. In the park, they can see birds ❹ __________ and lots of flowers and trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My favorite thing to bake is cake .This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then, weigh out the ingredients. Then, you mix the flour, sugar, milk and melted butter. Then, you can add coconut and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the cake in the oven for 30 minutes. When it's cold, you can add melted chocolate on the top. It looks really pretty.

A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. You need to turn your ---------- on to get it hot.
   a light b school c oven d home
2. Bake the cake in the oven for ---------- minutes.
   a 10 b 20 c 30 d 40

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is your favorite thing to bake? ------------------------------
4. What are the ingredients of the cake? ------------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sun - us - The - and - heat - gives - light. ------------------------------
2. must - after - You - the - look - environment. ------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I'm good ------------ (on) playing tennis.
2. I was ------------ (travel) by boat to the island with my friends.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

reem has a crown on her head ------------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Sports

Guiding questions

1- What sport are you good at?
2- What is the most popular sport in Egypt?

----

5 محافظة الغربية
إدارة السنطة التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. People in Ancient Egypt .... very hard.
   a played b grew c sang d worked
2. Most people worked as ....
   a bakers b farmers c traders d fishermen
3. Egyptian craftsmen were ....
   a skillful b bad c lazy d not good
4. Everyone .... Ancient Egyptian craftsmen.
   a killed b created c respected d threw

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to be a .... I like making beautiful pots from clay.
   a trader b scribe c fisherman d craftsman
2. When the .... is strong, it's always windy.
   a sun b air c sky d star
3. There is no ...., so the island is very quiet.
   a traffic b farms c rivers d building
4. Alexandria is a ....
   a town b village c country d city

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

belt - good - crown - pockets - spotted

Hoda is wearing a beautiful dress. The dress is ① .... with a ② .... There are two ③ .... on it. Her sister is wearing a ④ .... on her head. She looks like a princess.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Water pollution is when harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. Water pollution can kill fish, birds and crabs that live in the water. It can

also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We can stop water pollution. We can save as much water as possible, take shorter showers, avoid running water and never throw garbage in or near a lake or a beach.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Water pollution is ....
   a dangerous   b beautiful   c interesting   d helpful
2. .... water can make children and old people ill.
   a Salty   b Fresh   c Clean   d Dirty

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is water pollution? ....
4. How can we stop water pollution? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. to - They - the - went - library - to - read. ....
2. My - grows - uncle - onions - potatoes - and. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I'm good at .... (play) basketball.
2. He .... (don't) like karate.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

We're going on a picnic on friday ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A computer programmer

Guiding phrases
- office job
- solving problems

....
....
....

6 محافظة الدقهلية

إدارة شرق المنصورة التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. I was very ---------- yesterday.
   a cold b rainy c hot d windy
2. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very ---------- .
   a low b high c little d small
3. We opened the ---------- at night when it was cool.
   a windows b doors c fridges d cars
4. Our mom made ---------- to cool us down.
   a coffee b tea c lemonade d milk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want "Om Ali" for ---------- tonight.
   a breakfast b desert c dessert d lunch
2. A vet ---------- on the animals in people's houses or farms.
   a checks b brings c solves d prefers
3. The galabeya is very cool because it is made of ---------- .
   a cotton b leather c plastic d paper
4. ---------- made things from clay, wood, and gold.
   a Traders b Doctors c Vets d Craftsmen

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - garden - family - grows - onions

Ahmed lives in a big house. He lives with his ❶ ---------- . There is a big ❷ ---------- in the house, where his father ❸ ---------- many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He has chickens, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the ❹ ---------- .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Saturday, our school made a trip to one of the clothes factories in Al-Mahala. We went there on the school bus. **There**, we saw how cloth is made. They made cloth in a factory and made clothes like shirts, suits and trousers in another one. We got a rest in one of the restaurants. We had our lunch there. The food was delicious. We went home in the evening. It was a wonderful trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**There**" refers to the ----------.
   a bus   b restaurant   c factory   d school
2. They went to the factory by ----------.
   a bus   b car   c train   d plane

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they have a rest? ----------------------------
4. When did they go to the factory? ----------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. went - the - Salma - to - store. ----------------------------
2. French - bad - is - He - at - speaking. ----------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ------------ (get) a new phone a week ago.
2. You ------------ (must to) shout in the classroom.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

he bought a new shirt last week ----------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy and unhealthy food

Guiding phrases

- chicken and vegetables
- good health

----

7 محافظة كفر الشيخ

إدارة قلين التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Hamza's father is a ....
   a doctor b tour guide c teacher d farmer
2. Tour guides show .... the country they are visiting.
   a tourists b engineers c fishermen d students
3. Tour guides need to be ....
   a bad b sad c friendly d impolite
4. Tourists should have a .... holiday.
   a bad b terrible c awful d good

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a very large building built a long time ago.
   a castle b cage c room d box
2. I must tidy .... the kitchen. It's messy.
   a on b up c of d in
3. I wear black .... on my hand in winter.
   a shoes b pants c gloves d sunglasses
4. We mustn't talk in the ....
   a library b street c park d playground

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

beach - care - swimming - park - keep

When the summer comes, the weather becomes hotter. Many people like to go to the beach. They enjoy ❶ .... People sometimes have meals on the ❷ ...., swim in the water, sing and dance. Some people keep the beach clean, but others don't ❸ .... , so we can find much trash on the beach. We should teach those people how to ❹ .... their environment clean.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could

weave baskets, bake bread and make sandals and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut. Everyone in Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "Ancient" means very ---------- .
   a tall   b high   c old   d new
2. The text is about ---------- .
   a Kings in Ancient Egypt   b Women in Ancient Egypt
   c Scribes   d Craftsmen

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What could women make and sell at the market? --------------------
4. How do you know that the Ancient Egyptians women were very successful?
   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. black - is - The air - toxic - and. --------------------
2. the Nile - grows - in - Cotton - Delta. --------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There aren't ---------- (some) figs in the fridge.
2. He ---------- (catch) the bus to Giza every day.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

would you like an orange, ahmed? --------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Guiding phrases

- take part in exciting activities
- stay in comfortable huts

----

8 محافظة البحيرة

إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Hany likes __________.
   - a food
   - b sports
   - c drinks
   - d birds
2. He loves watching __________ matches.
   - a football
   - b basketball
   - c squash
   - d tennis
3. He is __________ at playing football.
   - a bad
   - b sad
   - c good
   - d happy
4. He is bad at playing __________.
   - a football
   - b basketball
   - c squash
   - d tennis

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. __________ is the connection between living things and non-living things.
   - a Ecosystem
   - b Desert
   - c Weather
   - d Island
2. My shoes are made of __________.
   - a feather
   - b leather
   - c wood
   - d wool
3. A / An __________ is a very bad dream.
   - a emission
   - b smoke
   - c nightmare
   - d breath
4. **A:** What's your favorite __________? **B:** I like chicken.
   - a drink
   - b food
   - c sport
   - d subject

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

taekwondo - prizes - medal - flag - won

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian athlete. She started practicing (1) __________ at the age of seven. She won many (2) __________ at the age of 14. She also won the bronze (3) __________ in 2016. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian (4) __________ at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba. The local people are very friendly. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, **hiking**, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything for a great holiday.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

a Luxor   b Delta   c Taba   d Cairo

2. The underlined word "**hiking**" means ....

a sleeping   b running   c walking   d singing

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba? ....

4. What activities can eco-tourists enjoy in Taba? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - play - How often - you - tennis? ....

2. am - Island - on - I - Elephantine. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is good at .... (draw) pictures.

2. I .... (don't) see my brother yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what would you like to eat ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your job in the future

Guiding questions

1- What's your future job?
2- Why do you want to do this job?

....

....

9 محافظة الإسماعيلية

إدارة الإسماعيلية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ali went to Dahab last__________.

   a month   b year   c week   d day

2. Ali was traveling by __________.

   a car   b train   c bus   d boat

3. Tourists enjoyed the__________air and the sea.

   a polluted   b toxic   c black   d clean

4. They were__________to leave.

   a happy   b sad   c excited   d nervous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I always wear my swimming__________in the sea.

   a goggles   b rackets   c pockets   d crowns

2. This man is a__________man. He is a very, very big person.

   a small   b kind   c giant   d lazy

3. The__________makes shoes and bags.

   a dentist   b pianist   c shoemaker   d dressmaker

4. Ancient Egyptian__________made beautiful paintings and jewelry.

   a scribes   b craftsmen   c traders   d doctors

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sleeves - robe - galabeya - shorts - gloves

I live in Aswan. It's usually very hot here. I'm wearing ❶ __________ and a T-shirt. Many men wear the ❷ __________. This is a long white ❸ __________.It's made from cotton. The ❹ __________ are so long, so we don't get sunburned.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because of the pollution that planes cause. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

a tourism b eco-tourism c ecosystem d system

2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by ....

a trains b cars c planes d buses

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does eco-tourism look after? ....

4. Where do eco-tourists stay? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. your - What - healthy - is - favorite - food? ....

2. visited - Elephantine - We - yesterday - Island ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (usually) drink cola. I don't like it.

2. She .... (is) taking photos yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

it's going to be cold in cairo. ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Ancient Egyptian women

Guiding questions

1- How did women work in Ancient Egypt?

2- Who was the famous queen in Ancient Egypt?

....

....



إدارة المنتزه التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Sara invited Marwa to visit __________ .

a Alexandria b Cairo c Luxor d Aswan

2. Marwa and Sara are going to the __________ .

a beach b cinema c market d park

3. It is __________ in Alexandria in winter.

a hot b cold c rainy d nice

4. Sara doesn't have __________ .

a shoes b a jacket c a hat d an umbrella

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali is very __________ . He has a lot of money.

a poor b clever c rich d bad

2. I like eating chocolate, but it is __________ .

a fruits b unhealthy c sugar d healthy

3. I saw a __________ who caught a big and beautiful fish.

a fisherman b chef c carpenter d baker

4. We use a __________ to cut vegetables.

a spoon b cage c glass d knife

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

much - meals - outside - junk - exercise

To be healthy, you should eat a balanced diet. Never drink cola or eat ❶ __________ food. You shouldn't eat too ❷ __________ chocolate. Do any kind of ❸ __________ like football or swimming. Play games with your friends ❹ __________ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sama is a good student. She traveled to Japan with her school last month. She was very happy because the trip was very interesting. She took two planes: from Cairo to Dubai, then from Dubai to Tokyo. It is the capital of Japan. The trip took a very long time. It was a tiring trip; it took eighteen hours until they reached the hotel. Sama liked the Japanese people because they are very helpful and gave good directions when Sama got lost. Sama liked the technology and the rules in Japan.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The trip was interesting but ....
   a nice   b good   c short   d tiring
2. It took Sama .... hours to reach the hotel.
   a 8   b 18   c 80   d 800

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sama like in Japan? ....
4. How many planes should Sama take in this trip until back home? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. like - What - for - lunch - would - you? ....
2. bought - He - a bag - nuts - of - yesterday. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They .... (doesn't) like fish.
2. She is good at .... (play) squash.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Let s play football in the park ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Air pollution

Guiding questions

1- What causes air pollution?
2- Why is air pollution dangerous?

....

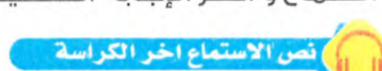
....



إدارة مطروح التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Dina likes to eat __________ food.
   - a) bad
   - b) delicious
   - c) healthy
   - d) salty
2. __________ is her favorite food.
   - a) Fish
   - b) Rice
   - c) Potatoes
   - d) Chicken
3. Sometimes, Dina likes to eat __________ .
   - a) juice
   - b) chocolate
   - c) cookies
   - d) candy
4. She exercises and __________ well every day.
   - a) tidies
   - b) sleeps
   - c) plays
   - d) meets

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wear my football __________ to play with my friends.
   - a) glasses
   - b) boots
   - c) belts
   - d) books
2. My mom's dress is made of __________ .
   - a) plastic
   - b) wood
   - c) cotton
   - d) paper
3. __________ things can grow.
   - a) Living
   - b) Non-Living
   - c) Dead
   - d) Cold
4. Farmers __________ their plants every day.
   - a) water
   - b) drink
   - c) burn
   - d) make

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - farm - grows - school - chickens

My uncle is a farmer. He has a big ❶ __________ . He ❷ __________ onions and tomatoes. He also raises chickens and ducks. He gets fresh eggs from the ❸ __________ . He eats some eggs and sells some eggs at the ❹ __________ . I like going there because it is so fun to collect the eggs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It is winter and it is very cold. The grassshoper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's winter and the grasshopper is ....
   a thirsty b happy c hungry d excited
2. The grasshopper knocks on the .... door.
   a cat's b bees's c mouse's d ant's

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the grasshopper hungry? ....
4. What does the grasshopper learn from the ant? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a scarf - Wear - protect - face - your - to. ....
2. the - are - The butterflies - in - flying - sun. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We wouldn't have .... (some) oranges.
2. She is very good at .... (cook).

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

she wore a green cotton dress ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My school uniform

Guiding phrases
- very smart
- blue trousers

....

....

....

12 محافظة بني سويف

إدارة ببا التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Soha is bad at playing ....
   a football b tennis c handball d volleyball
2. Soha is good at making ....
   a cakes b rice c meat d pizza
3. Omar is Soha's ....
   a cousin b brother c uncle d son
4. Omar is .... years old.
   a 24 b 34 c 14 d 4

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Bananas and apples are .... food.
   a bad b dirty c unhealthy d healthy
2. A .... helps sick animals.
   a teacher b doctor c vet d dentist
3. Hoda was .... lunch at 3 pm yesterday.
   a studying b arriving c having d sleeping
4. You should take .... showers to save water.
   a colder b shorter c longer d hotter

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clothes - near - people - home - source

Egypt is famous for the River Nile. It's the most important (1) .... of fresh water. It's (2) .... for a lot of animals. These animals live (3) .... or in the river. The River Nile is important for (4) ...., too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Noha. I'm in grade five. I love healthy food. I have breakfast with my family at seven am. I have eggs, cheese and orange juice. My sister Salma likes to have ful medames and bread. I help my mom in the kitchen, I set the table for lunch. Today, I will have chicken and vegetables for lunch. I love being healthy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha is in grade ---------- .

a one   b four   c five   d six

2. Noha loves ---------- food.

a healthy   b unhealthy   c bad   d fat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When does Noha have breakfast? ----------------------------
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ----------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. I - my - Yesterday, - room - tidied. ----------------------------
2. grass - mustn't - You - the - on - walk. ----------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There aren't ------------ (some) figs in the fridge.
2. He ------------ (catch) the bus to Giza every day.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

would you like an orange, ali? ----------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Elephantine Island

Guiding phrases

- oldest part
- full of history

----

13 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة منفلوط التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali is very good at ....
   a football   b handball   c squash   d sailing
2. Ali can move ....
   a fast   b slow   c quiet   d bad
3. Ali can play in a .... with walls.
   a playground   b park   c small court   d stadium
4. Ali sometimes plays ....
   a tennis   b kung fu   c karate   d swimming

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can buy and sell things at the ....
   a school   b market   c park   d club
2. I study plants. I am a ....
   a dentist   b vet   c biologist   d receptionist
3. Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan.
   a oldest   b newest   c fattest   d slowest
4. Mona is in her .... She is going to sleep.
   a sneakers   b sunglasses   c goggles   d pajamas

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fields - animals - hard - buzzing - butterflies

It's a good day in spring. The bees are (1) .... and the (2) .... are flying in the sun. The ants are working (3) .... The sun is shining and the (4) .... and the gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The most popular sport in Egypt is football. Egyptians like football very much. Children like to play football in the parks and in the clubs. They can also play football at school. Egyptians also like watching football matches on TV. **They** like watching the matches of Mohamed Salah. He is a very good football player. Mohamed Salah is very fast. He plays football very well. All the Egyptians people like Mohamed Salah. He is my favorite football player.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children can also play football at ....
   a) the bank   b) school   c) the hotel   d) the museum
2. Mohamed Salah is very ....
   a) fast   b) fat   c) old   d) slow

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to? ....
4. How does Mohamed Salah play football? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. things - were - Craftsmen - making - at - good. ....
2. wear - usually - What - you - do? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There isn't .... (**some**) milk in the fridge.
2. Ali is good at .... (**play**) football.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i was studying English ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Keeping healthy

Guiding phrases

- eat healthy food
- play sports

....

....

14 محافظة سوهاج

إدارة أخميم التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Noha is a ....
   a vet b shoemaker c doctor d teacher
2. She works with ....
   a cars b cakes c computers d animals
3. Sometimes she works .... and people bring their animals to her.
   a outside b at school c inside d in the park
4. She goes to people's houses or ....
   a farms b parks c gardens d kitchens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My shoes are made of ....
   a leather b wood c wool d metal
2. Hedaya won the bronze ....
   a key b metal c medal d racket
3. At bedtime, I wear my ....
   a shoes b pajamas c suitcases d sunglasses
4. There are very nice projects .... after the coral reefs.
   a walking b traveling c looking d staying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - little - keep - rain - sand

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. This means that the people live in the desert try to ❶ .... cool in the day and ❷ .... at night. It doesn't often ❸ .... in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's ❹ .... when you look at London.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I can't breathe, because the air is black and toxic. Inside the house we use air freshener to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside, there are too many cars and much traffic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to hospital because of problems with his breathing.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The air is .... and toxic.
   a black   b white   c blue   d yellow
2. There are .... cars.
   a many   b much   c little   d a lot

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't we go to school? ....
4. Who had to go to hospital? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sometimes - tennis - play - I . ...
2. sleeping - He - yesterday - at - wasn't - night. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I would like .... (any) eggs, please.
2. I must .... (does) homework.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what sports do we have in egypt? ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My favorite sport

Guiding questions

1- Which sport do you like?
2- Where do you play it?

....

....



إدارة قوص التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الأستماع اخر الكراسة

1. My favorite sport is ---------- .
   a tennis b football c squash d chess
2. We play this sport on the ---------- .
   a pitch b court c pool d shop
3. I play it in a ---------- .
   a brother b farmer c doctor d team
4. I'm very ---------- at it.
   a bad b good c sad d ill

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He uses his swimming ---------- when he goes to pools.
   a sunglasses b goggles c rackets d boots
2. ---------- are gases from cars or factories.
   a Greenhouses b Cakes c Emissions d Food
3. Women wear ---------- around their necks.
   a sunglasses b necklaces c pajamas d shorts
4. Eco-tourism helps to ---------- the wildlife.
   a protect b build c buy d ask

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fantastic - eco-tourism - pollution - local - valleys

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. It's an excellent example of a part of Egypt where ❶ ---------- works well. I can find ❷ ----------, mountains, desert, and the sea there. I can find ❸ ---------- wildlife. I can enjoy the environment. The ❹ ---------- people are friendly. I can do a lot of activities. I like helping tourists.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Ola is a vet. She loves her job and animals. She gets up early and goes to hospital. She likes helping a lot of kinds of animals. She checks the people's animals and give them medicine. She can go to people's houses or farms to check on them. She feels so happy when animals get better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola is a __________ .

a teacher b nurse c vet d doctor

2. She helps the animals and gives them __________ .

a money b cakes c food d medicine

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ola check? ______________________________

4. Where does Ola work? ______________________________

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. live - a city - Do - in - you? ______________________________.

2. was - kind - The shoemaker - honest - and. ______________________________

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about __________ (eat) mangoes?

2. Do you have __________ (some) carrots?

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we have a variety weather in Egypt ______________________________

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A zoo keeper

Guiding phrases

- looks after animals
- gives them a bath

____

____

16 محافظة الأقصر

إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Elephantine Island is a .... place.
   a fantastic b bad c dirty d ugly
2. It's in ....
   a Luxor b Giza c Cairo d Aswan
3. .... and tourists visit it.
   a French b Chinese c Japanese d Egyptians
4. It's a beautiful ....
   a mountain b lake c island d tower

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... was a system of writing in Ancient Egypt.
   a Medicine b Painting c Hieroglyphs d Money
2. I went to Aswan .... car.
   a by b at c in d on
3. We use gold to make ....
   a soil b wood c paper d jewelry
4. Fish and .... are living things.
   a crabs b rocks c sunlight d sand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cold - cotton - dark - like - galabeya

Our uniform is dark blue skirts for girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue ❶ .... shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's ❷ ...., we wear ❸ .... blue vests or jackets. I ❹ .... my uniform!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a scientist. Last week, he drove to the desert with his friend Ali to find out new desert animals. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car, but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. It was good that they did not hit them. Suddenly, the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His father went to the desert by ....
   a bus b train c car d bike
2. His father is a/an ....
   a scientist b engineer c doctor d teacher

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the father go to the desert? ....
4. What did they see through the window? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. often - do - How - play - you - tennis? ....
2. and - things - Traders - sold - bought - different. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about .... (go) to the zoo, Ali?
2. Karim never .... (drink) cola, he thinks it is unhealthy.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

she went to egypt to see the pyramids ....

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

1- What jobs were in Ancient Egypt?

2- How did Ancient people work?

....

....

17 محافظة البحر الأحمر

إدارة سفاجا التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The galabeya is a/an ---------- Egyptian clothing.
   a modern b new c traditional d usual
2. The galabeya is made from ---------- .
   a cotton b wool c plastic d feathers
3. The galabeya has ---------- , but they are hidden.
   a gloves b ties c pockets d sleeves
4. The sleeves are ---------- , so we don't get sunburned.
   a short b long c small d tiny

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How often do you ---------- to school?
   a try b meet c walk d have
2. When the sea gets higher, we get a ---------- .
   a flood b drought c tornado d sandstorm
3. A ---------- works in a hotel.
   a teacher b receptionist c scientist d dentist
4. The air is black and ---------- .
   a delicious b clear c beautiful d toxic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

competitor - kind - prize - needs - medal

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She was born in 1993. She is a very ❶ ---------- person. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special ❷ ---------- , Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to complete against, so Hedaya became her ❸ ---------- and lost. Raja could win the gold ❹ ---------- .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

People have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. **They** eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal.

Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of fresh water and practise a sport every day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People have ---------- meals every day.

a once b one c three d five

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ---------- .

a people b meals c animals d birds

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ----------------------------

4. When do people have breakfast? ----------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - favorite - What - food - your? ----------------------------

2. were - traveling - We - by - train. ----------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They didn't ------------ (cleaned) the room yesterday.

2. I would like ------------ (any) tea, please.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i live in cairo. ----------------------------

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My city (Aswan)

Guiding phrases

- fantastic place
- no traffic

----

18 محافظة الوادي الجديد

إدارة الداخلية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Sami went on a school trip to __________ .
   a Aswan b Cairo c Alexandria d Giza
2. Alexandria is a beautiful __________ .
   a city b zoo c farm d park
3. Sami went to Alexandria by __________ .
   a plane b bus c car d train
4. It was an exciting __________ .
   a garden b trip c skirt d bird

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Water pollution can __________ organisms that live in water.
   a play b protect c kill d clean
2. Ashraf wants __________ for dessert.
   a eggs b rice c mahalabia d meat
3. Emad looks after people's teeth. He's a __________ .
   a dentist b carpenter c farmer d teacher
4. A __________ is an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
   a shade b giant c grass d greedy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

understand - Aswan - with - place - friends

I'm Ali. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic (1) __________ . It's in (2) __________ and there's lots to see. I was traveling by boat to the island with my (3) __________ . We were trying to (4) __________ the Elephantine name. We think it's the shape.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My **parents** help her practice well. She is very clever and active.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara plays squash at the ---------- .
   a park b club c zoo d garden
2. The underlined word "**parents**" means ---------- .
   a teachers b sisters c brothers d father and mother

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Sara? --
4. What does Sara want to be? --

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. to - play - Tarek - a racket - bought - tennis --
2. do - my - I - homework - English - must --

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ---------- (have) got any grapes.
2. I'm good at ---------- (play) football.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

would you like some oranges --

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A famous sportsperson

Guiding questions

1- Who is this famous sportsperson?
2- Why is this sportsperson famous?

----

19 امتحان الأزهر الشريف - منطقة الشرقية الأزهرية

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:



1. I was at school with my .... **(brother - classmate - teacher)**
2. It started to get .... **(dark - black - blue)**
3. I saw a storm and it was .... **(beautiful - frightening - fast)**

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

sneakers - buy - swimming - tennis

Mom : Are you ready, Mariam? We need to .... a lot of things in town.

Mariam : Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new ....

Mom : Oh, yes, for your .... lessons next week.

Mariam : Do we have time to go .... today, Mom?

Mom : Not today, Mariam.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. We can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't healthy for us, so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What types of food are healthy?

....

2. Why riding bikes is good for a healthier life?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. We can include fruit and .... in our meals. (cola - salad - vegetables)

4. Junk food .... healthy. (are - isn't - is)

5. Riding bikes means .... pollution. (less - more - no)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good at .... football.

   a play b played c playing

2. .... had to go to medical schools.

   a Doctors b Scribes c Traders

3. She went to town .... a dress.

   a buying b buy c to buy

4. Chicken and fish are ....

   a unhealthy b healthy c vegetables

5. A football .... is a place where we play football.

   a court b cinema c pitch

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. raining - Was - it? --

2. was - It - a very - day - hot. --

3. I - a suit - wear - do - to - karate. --

4. an - Swimming - sport - is - awesome --

5. has - tree - a mango - Fareeda - her - garden - in. --

20 امتحان الأزهر الشريف - منطقة سوهاج الأزهرية

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. People play football on ---------- . (courts - pitches - beaches)
2. A football team has ---------- players. (twelve - eleven - eighteen)
3. The winning team scores the most ---------- . (matches - goals - balls)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

grapes - would - some - buying

Seller : Hello, ------------------------------ you like some bananas?

Ali : No, thank you. I would like some ------------------------------ .

Seller : How about ------------------------------ some oranges?

Ali : Yes, I would like ------------------------------ .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

I'm Seif. I'm in grade five. I live with my family in Cairo. My school uniform is a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. When it is cold, we can wear our blue sweaters.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Which grade is Seif in?

----

2. What are the colors of the uniform?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Seif is ………… years old. (five - ten - six)
4. The girls wear a blue ………… . (trousers - socks - skirt)
5. When it is cold, they wear blue ………… . (skirts - sweaters - shorts)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I was traveling by ………… to the island.
   a boat b foot c metro
2. Tourism gives ………… for local people.
   a food b jobs c sports
3. Aser is good at ………… tennis.
   a play b playing c plays
4. I had a bad dream, it was ………… .
   a a nightmare b a greenhouse c an emission
5. Basel ………… take his bag last week.
   a don't b doesn't c didn't

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. went - I - my - to - sleep - bedroom - to. ………………………………
2. He - with - in - lived - town - wife - his. ………………………………
3. Mexico - hats - wear - People - in ………………………………
4. wearing - Soha - a - is - dress - spotted. ………………………………
5. coffee - like - you - Would - some? ………………………………

21 امتحان الأزهر الشريف - منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:


نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. We wear a .... sleeved white shirt. **(long - short - small)**
2. The girls wear a .... shirt. **(gray - blue - white)**
3. When it is.........., we wear sweaters. **(hot - sunny - cold)**

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

chocolate - eat - healthy - favorite

Dina : What's your .... food, Fareeda?

Fareeda : It's ....

Dina : I love chocolate, too. But it isn't ...., is it?

Fareeda : I think it's OK to .... a little.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016, she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal. Hedaya is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who is Hedaya Malak?

....

2. When did Hedaya Malak begin practicing taekwondo?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Hedaya Malak was born in ---------- . (1991 - 1992 - 1993)
4. Raja Garmash won the ---------- medal in 2016. (gold - sliver - bronze)
5. Hedaya Malak is a very ---------- person. (bad - kind - dangerous)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She went to town to ---------- a dress.
   a buy b buys c buying
2. Alexandria is a ---------- .
   a town b city c village
3. You ---------- walk on the grass.
   a can b mustn't c must
4. In a heat wave, we must stay in the ---------- .
   a shade b sun c storm
5. Nada wants ---------- for dessert.
   a onions b chocolate c tomatoes

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - like - weather - the - What? --
2. have - good - you - Did - a - trip? --
3. a racket - Ahmed - to - tennis - bought - play. --
4. have - we - in - sports - do - Egypt - What? --
5. play - We - games - computer - the - at - weekend. --

22 محافظة أسيوط - امتحان طلاب الدمج

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

lungs - bad - emissions - outside

I can't breathe well because the air is black and toxic. We can't go ❶ __________. There are too many cars. There are too many ❷ __________ from cars. It's dangerous for children's ❸ __________. We can't go to school because the air is ❹ __________.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I always wear my swimming __________ in the sea.

   a) goggles b) pool c) pitch d) court

2. She is wearing __________ on her hands.

   a) belts b) gloves c) sunglasses d) boots

3. The __________ makes shoes and bags.

   a) dentist b) pianist c) shoemaker d) dressmaker

4. Ancient Egyptian __________ made beautiful paintings and jewelry.

   a) scribes b) craftsmen c) traders d) doctors

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because of the pollution that planes cause. <u>**They**</u> stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a tourism b eco-tourism c ecosystem d system
2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by ....
   a trains b cars c planes d buses
3. Eco-tourists stay in ...., local hotels.
   a big b tiny c huge d small
4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a eco-tourists b local people c hotels d houses

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form in the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. sports - good - What - at - are - you?
   a What good sports you are at?
   b What sports are you good at?
   c What you are good at sports?
2. favorite - is - My - mango - fruit.
   a My favorite fruit is mango.
   b My mango fruit is favorite.
   c My fruit is mango favorite.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

a	- After the zoo, I went back home. - Then, I went to bed. - Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals.	b	- Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals. - Then, I went to bed - After the zoo, I went back home.
c	- Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals. - After the zoo, I went back home. - Then, I went to bed.	d	- I saw animals. - Then, I went to bed. - After the zoo, I went back home. - Yesterday, I went to the zoo.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع
الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات
الخاصة بكتاب Bit Bit

Test 1 on Units 1-2

My sister Laila likes sports very much. Her favorite sport is basketball. She practices it in the club. She is too tall. She can throw the ball into the basket. She wins the match with her friends against the other team.

Test 2 on Units 1-2

My favorite sport is karate. I practiced karate at the age of five. I always go to the club with my father. I wear a white suit. I practice hard to win medals. I want to be healthy so I can do karate well.

Test 1 on Units 3-4

Today we will travel to Alexandria. I help my mother to pack our suitcases. I will take my favorite swimming shorts and T-shirts. My brother Emad will take his sunglasses because it's hot and sunny in Alexandria. My mother will need her dresses because they are comfortable to wear. It will be a good holiday.

Test 2 on Units 3-4

Hatem lives in a village in Aswan. Every Friday he rides a felucca with his father. He enjoyed the view of the Nile. The sunsets are fantastic. He can see lots of statues in the Aswan Museum. He visits Aswan Botanical Garden. It is amazing.

Test 1 on Units 5-6

My brother Ahmed is a computer programmer. He likes his job very much. When he was young, he loved playing computer games. He enjoys solving problems and working with other people. He doesn't like working outside. He works in an office in a big building in Giza.

Test 2 on Units 5-6

Egypt has a special climate. It's always sunny and hot in summer. In winter, it's cold and sometimes rains. It never snows in Egypt. By the sea, it rains a lot more. So, Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. The Nile is important because we can get water from the south. This water helps us to grow our crops and drink lots of water.

General Tests

1 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية



1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Ali is healthy. His favorite food is mangoes. He doesn't like chocolate, it is unhealthy. He likes chicken, fish and rice. He likes playing sports with his brother.

2 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية



1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. There were many jobs. Farmers planted many crops. Traders traveled up and down the sea. Scribes knew how to read and write.

 محافظة القليوبية - إدارة طوخ

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friends and I went to Aswan. We went there last month. We visited the Elephantine Island. It's one of the greatest island in the River Nile.

(4) محافظة المنوفية - إدارة السادات

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

It's spring. The sun is shining. There are a lot of animals and insects. The bees are buzzing. The ants are working. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Finally, he is hungry and he can't have any food.

(5) محافظة الغربية - إدارة السنطة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Most people worked as farmers. Egyptian craftsmen were skillful. Everyone respected Ancient Egyptian craftsmen.

(6) محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I was very hot yesterday because there was a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high. We opened the windows at night when it was cool. Our mom made lemonade to cool us down.

(7) محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hamza's father is a tour guide. Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guides need to be friendly. Tourism is important for our economy, so tourists should have a good holiday.

 محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Hany likes sports. He loves watching football matches. He's very good at playing football, but he is bad at playing squash.

 محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali went to Dahab last week. He was traveling by bus. He saw many tourists there. They enjoyed the clean air and the sea. They were sad to leave.

 محافظة الأسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Sara invited Marwa to visit Alexandria. Marwa and Sara are going to the beach. It's cold in Alexandria in winter. Sara doesn't have a jacket.

 محافظة مطروح - إدارة مطروح

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Dina likes to eat healthy food. Fish is her favorite food. Sometimes Dina likes to eat chocolate, but it is unhealthy to eat much. She exercises and plays well every day.

(12) محافظة بني سويف - إدارة ببا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Soha is bad at playing handball, but she is good at tennis. She is good at making cakes. Soha has a brother. His name is Omar. He's fourteen years old. He is bad at tennis. .

 محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali loves playing squash. He is very good at it because he can move fast. Ali plays this sport in a small court with walls all around. He has a small green racket. He hits the ball hard with it. Ali sometimes plays tennis. He plays tennis in a big court.

 14 محافظة سوهاج - إدارة أخميم

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Noha is a vet. She works with animals. Sometimes she works inside and people bring their animals to her. She goes to people's houses or farms.

15 محافظة قنا - إدارة قوص

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My favorite sport is football. We play this sport on the pitch. I play it in a team. I'm very good at it.

16 محافظة الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Elephantine Island is a fantastic place to visit. It's in Aswan. Egyptians and tourists visit it. It's a beautiful island.

 17 محافظة البحر الأحمر - إدارة سفاجا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

The galabeya is a traditional Egyptian clothing. It's made from cotton. The galabeya has pockets, but they are hidden. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned.

 18 محافظة الوادي الجديد - إدارة الدخيلة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My brother Sami went on a school trip to Alexandria. Alexandria is a beautiful city. Sami went to Alexandria by train. It was an exciting trip.

 19 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I was at school with my classmates. It started to get dark. We went outside then I saw a storm and it was frightening.

 20 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People play football on pitches. There are eleven players in a football team. The winning team scores the most goals.

 21 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My school uniform is really smart. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue shirt. When it is cold, we wear sweaters.